

# PDF-XChange Editor

# **User Manual**

#### Head Quarters:

Tracker Software Products (Canada) Ltd.,

P.O. Box 79, 9622 Chemainus Road Chemainus. VOR 1K0 British Columbia, Canada

Sales Tel: Canada (+00) 1-250-324-1621 Fax: Canada (+00) 1-250-324-1623

In Europe:

Unit 17, Raleigh Court. Priestly Way. Crawley. Sussex. RH10 9PD. England.

> **Sales** Tel: +44 (0) 20 8555 1122 Fax: (+00) 1-250-324-1623

http://www.tracker-software.com

sales@tracker-software.com

Created: Tuesday, September 08, 2015

Copyright © 2005-2012 Tracker Software Products. All Rights Reserved.

### PDF-XChange Editor v5.x

#### copyright 2001 - 2015© Tracker Software Products. All rights reserved.

http://www.tracker-software.com

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. This document contains proprietary information which is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated to another language without the prior written consent of Tracker Software Products.

# Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Welcome	1
Chapter 2: Introduction	2
System Requirements	4
IMPORTANT! Evaluation mode vs. Licensed mode	
Switches for EXE installers	8
Switches for MSI installers	
XCVault Utility - Network Administrators	
Uninstalling the program	
Command Line option	
Keyboard Shortcuts	
Chapter 3: PDF Editor Overview	
PDF Display Area	
Chapter 4: Main Menu	
File	
Open	
Open from URL	
Save	
New Document	
With Blank Pages	
Combine Files into a Single PDF	
From Text File	
From Rich Text Format (RTF) File	
From Image File(s)	
From Scanner	
Send by E-mail	63
Revert	64
Close	65
Export	
Print	71
Document Properties	
Copy Full File Name	
Open Containing Folder	
Exit	
Edit	
Find	
Search	
Properties	
Export settings	
Import settings	
Reset Settings	

Preferences	
Documents	
Page Display	
Page Text	
Full Screen	
Performance	
Color Management	
Languages	
Prompts	
File Associations	
Registration	
Accessibility	
Measurement	
Identity	
Security	
JavaScript	
Snapshot Tool	
Forms	
Commenting	
Signatures	
Scanner Presets	
Plug-ins	
Send Mail	
Search Providers	
Launch Applications	
Customize UI	
Update	
Speech	
View	
Toolbars	
Rotate View	
Bookmarks	
Bookmark Editor	_
Bookmark Properties & Actions	
Thumbnails	
Other Panes	
Destinations	-
Content	
Articles	
Signatures	
Layers	
Comments	
Attachments	
Fields	
Pan and Zoom	
Stamps Palette	
Comment Styles Palette	
Properties Pane	
Page Layout	

Zoom	
Show	
Snap	
Go To	
Portfolio	
Full Screen Mode	211
Document	
Header and Footer	
Watermarks	216
Background	219
Bates Numbering	
Insert Pages	
Insert Pages	
Insert Empty Pages	
Insert Images	231
Insert Scanned Pages	
Insert Text	
Insert RTF	237
Extract Pages	238
Replace Pages	241
Delete Pages	243
Crop Pages	
Crop Page Tool	
Resize Pages	247
Rotate Pages	
OCR Pages	
Signing	
Redaction	
Comments	256
Flatten Comments	257
Summarize Comments	259
Import Comments	
Export Comments to Data File	
Show Comments	
Show Comments List	
Comment Styles Palette	
Form	
Manage Form Data	271
Import Data	
Export Data	273
Highlight Fields	274
Reset Form	275
Object	
Transform Selection	
Duplicate Annotations	
Tools	279
Basic Tools	
Zoom Tools	
Content Editing Tools	

Edit Content Tool	
Add Text Tool	
Comment And Markup Tools	
Important! Please read!	
Container Properties	
Comment And Markup Example	
Edit Multiple Comments	
Sticky Note Tool	
Notation Tools	
Typewriter Tool	
Textbox Tool	
Callout Tool	
Text Highlighting Tools	
Highlight Text Tool	
Crossout Text Tool	
Underline Text Tool	
Markup Tools	
Line and Arrow Tools	
Rectangle Tool	
Oval (Circle) Tool	
Polygon Line Tool	
Polygon Tool	
Cloud Tool	
Stamp Tool	
Pencil Tool	
Eraser Tool	
File Attachment Tool	
Sound Tool	
Comment Styles Palette	
Stamps Palette	
Measuring Tools	
Distance Tool	
Perimeter Tool	
Area Tool	
Calibrate Measurement	
Link Tools	
Link Creation Tool	
Advanced	
Bookmarks	
Bookmark Table of Contents	
Generate Bookmarks From Page Text	
Text Matching Options	
Resulting Appearance	
Title Formatting	
Bookmark Every Nth Page	
Add Text to Bookmark Title	
Convert Named Destinations To Regular Destinations	
Build Table of Contents	
Sort Bookmarks	

Validate Bookmarks	
Export Bookmarks To HTML File	
Export Bookmarks to Text File	
Window	
Help	
Chapter 5: Toolbars Area	
Menu Toolbar	
File Toolbar	
Standard Toolbar	
Rotate View Toolbar	
Zoom Toolbar	
Comment And Markup Toolbar	
Content Editing Tools Toolbar	
Measuring Toolbar	
Chapter 6: Navigation Bar	
Chapter 7: Shell Extensions	
iFilter	
Chapter 8: Tracker Update	
Command Line Arguments	
Chapter 9: Index	



Welcome to the PDF-XChange Editor help manual. Browse through the help pages by clicking on the icons below or selecting pages in the table of contents to the left. To quickly find specific product information, enter search criteria in the search box above and click the search button.



Tracker Update

### Introduction

System Requirements IMPORTANT! Evaluation mode vs. Licensed mode Switches for EXE installers Switches for MSI installers XCVault Utility - Network Administrators Uninstalling the program Command Line option Keyboard Shortcuts

Please note that from Build 3.x of the PDF-XChange Editor our help files are provided in primarily via our online Help systems though a download of the entire contents is also generally provided in PDF format if required – any older Viewer Help files in 'CHM' HTML format are not up to date and should be deleted from your system.

Tracker Software Products Ltd are the authors and publishers of a number of award winning software applications and developer toolkits including the best selling PDF-XChange and PDF-Tools products for the creation, manipulation, viewing, editing and printing of ISO standard compatible PDF files.

Our tools are used by millions of clients around the world to work with the now ubiquitous Portable Document Format (PDF) created by Adobe Inc and released as an open standard to provide a common means to present documents that would always look the same when viewed on a user's PC - even if the Viewing party did not have all the fonts and images present on their own PC - could be contained within the PDF file to ensure common viewing.

To accompany the standard format, Adobe created a free viewer to ensure that anybody could view distributed PDF files freely without requiring the purchase of any additional software - the viewer was made freely available.

To create PDF files the user could purchase Adobe Acrobat from Adobe direct or as the specification of PDF format was freely available to competing software authors - software applications from 3rd parties quickly appeared and this healthy competition along with the stability of a freely available viewer at no cost has ensured that the PDF format has now become 'the' preferred method to share documents between Government agencies, departments privately and for companies large and small.

Everybody was happy, Adobe was the philanthropic author of a world wide standard available to anyone, End users and Suppliers could share all manner of documents and information and there was a healthy 3rd party software community expanding the market and ensuring that inexpensive solutions for creating and manipulating PDF files was available, for even the smallest business and private user - whilst Adobe remained at the top of the heap, providing heavyweight commercial solutions for big business.

And then ... for some reason only known to Adobe, they decided that some functionality would be available to users of their free Adobe Reader only if they used a product officially 'certified' to offer this functionality by Adobe - all competing software applications would now have to apply to Adobe for a certificate or the new functionality would not be possible with files made by competing and 'non' certified PDF creation and manipulation tools.

To be clear - we are not talking here about the creation of PDF files - but the ability to see, modify and use files already created and then to be viewed in Adobe's free PDF reader, most specifically commenting and annotation added to PDF files by non-Adobe creation tools - these could not be read by the Free Adobe Reader!

Suddenly the 'Open' PDF format was not so open and it was concern that Adobe would continue to extend this in the future to regain some degree of control over who can create software with the ability to offer advanced PDF creation and manipulation functionality - whereas in the past, the primary reason for the success of this standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the purpose without interference from any party - including Adobe.

And that is why 6 years ago we decided to create the 'Free' PDF-XChange Viewer to allow PDF files created by any software (not just ours or Adobe's) that adheres to the open PDF format specification as defined by Adobe - to take advantage of these extended features.

However - we have not stopped there and we are now pleased to continue the legacy of the FREE PDF-XChange Viewer with the all NEW PDF-XChange Editor !, We have added a host of useful features and functionality that users have told us they would find advantageous and usually only found in paid for software - such us our new Text Editing functionality. Further will continue to do so over the coming months and years - mostly free - but we have also added advanced functionality to Edit other content, modify, manipulate and create new PDF files, and for these extended features we do make a modest charge to allow us to continue in our endeavor's however - feel free to restrict your use to the free functionality should you not find the enhanced functionality of the paid for 'PRO' version of use to you.

**We commit to not making any functions for viewing content a chargeable extra** in the PDF-XChange Editor and to treat all files in the PDF format as equal - no matter with which tool they have been created - whether Adobe's, ours or any other 3rd party software publishers - if the file has been created to conform and adhere to the PDF specification and uses functions supported by our Viewer and Editor - it will be viewable - irrespective of the origin of the creation Tools author.

A very important and significant change in the ongoing development of the PDF format is it is now no longer controlled and set by Adobe - the PDF format is now officially controlled and determined by the ISO (International Organization for Standardization) and its future wholly determined and controlled independently of Adobe Inc for the benefit of all users and independent software developers, making the PDF format a truly open document format in perpetuity. We hope you find this viewer robust and reliable for your purposes - should you need help or support - please visit our free user support forums. We welcome you ideas and suggestions on these forums as well.

#### Notice

PDF-XChange Editor is a new and rapidly expanding product for Tracker Software Products, Ltd.

Due to the timing difference between the release of new versions of this product and the subsequent documentation, it is possible that certain functions may be active but not completely documented in the download that you receive.

Where we know that certain functions will be available but are not active at the time of documentation, we have marked these items with a legend **in red** such as:

#### N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.

Rest assured that we are aware of these and will be releasing new versions of the documentation as rapidly as we can to stay abreast of the latest features of **PDF-XChange Editor!** 

This documentation is valid through version .

# System Requirements

PDF-XChange Editor supports all Windows (32/64 bit) operating systems from Windows XP\*\* and later.



Version 5 (2012): Microsoft/Citrix Terminal Server compatible\*. Version 4: Microsoft/Citrix Terminal Server compatible\*. Version 3: Still available for Windows 95/98

\* Note: Though many users have virtualized some of our component products such as the PDF-XChange Viewer and PDF-Tools application using XenApp, we do not support this at this time.Particularly the printer drivers are not designed to work in a virtualized environment.

\*\* Limitations to product support for Windows XP

To experience the best performance of our products on all Windows operating systems, the onus is on users to ensure that

they have all the latest available Microsoft Windows Service Packs & Updates installed.

# IMPORTANT! Evaluation mode vs. Licensed mode

#### Important Notes for the PDF-XChange Editor - Build 5.x and later!

#### 

All the features you have been used to free - are still available as free functions and do not require a payment for license to use without restriction - subject always to our License standard terms and conditions. We are constantly also adding new features to both the FREE and paid for version - rest assured we have not simply used the offer of a FREE version to capture users interest and then removed the ability to use these features subsequently and required payment - any features available freely now, will always be free to use - and we are committed to expanding both the FREE features and those available in the PRO/Paid for versions.

#### Warning \*\*\* Warning \*\*\* Warning \*\*\* Warning!!!!!

All features marked as 'PRO' can only be used in <u>evaluation mode</u> with the absence of a valid serial key.

If you save the file after having used these PRO features, it will be altered to include watermarks making it obvious it has been modified evaluation mode.

#### These watermarks CANNOT subsequently be removed!

Please ensure that you do not modify original documents using these evaluation features if they cannot be recreated again and if it is important to you and cannot be reproduced!

#### Do you already own a PDF-XChange Editor PRO License? You may and may not know it!!!

- If you own a license for PDF-Tools, or PDF-XChange PRO, you will also be licensed for the PDF-XChange Editor.
  - Simply copy your serial number from your receipt and paste it into the Editor installation when asked or after installation into the option:
  - Edit -> Preferences -> Registration -> Add new serial key -> Paste from clipboard
  - You may also choose to use the Automated method by opening your Personal.xcvault, which is downloadable from within your account. Please note that the Editor must not be running for the serial key to be correctly applied when using the Personal.xcvault method. More details can be found here: http://www.tracker-software.com/knowledgebase/469-What-is-an-XCVault-file-and-how-does-it-work
  - Your saved PDF files using the special 'PRO' features will then be saved without any trial watermarks!!!

For further information, please Contact Us!

#### What Mode Am I Running?

If you are not sure whether your Editor is running in **Evaluation** or **PRO** mode, simply open the **Edit -> Preferences -> Registration** and make sure you see your serial **key state is Valid**.

PDF-XChange PRO		
366 MAINTENANCE DAYS LEFT	License: 3 Users Pack Key Data: PXP50-SMO48Mpl3Jhh ETEaKZ+EJDy= (b) Exp. Date: April 28, 2016 (366 maintenance days left) Key State: VALID	

If you see the following under the Registration Info section, you are running in the unregistered **Evaluation** mode, and you must be careful not to save the PDF if you make certain kinds of changes to it.

Segistration Info	
alled serial/license keys:	
	You have no license keys installed

#### Version history and projected future features...

To check for the latest Version history - please see this page on our web site:

http://www.tracker-software.com/PDFXE\_history.html

For the status of features available in Licensed mode (both current and up-coming):

http://www.tracker-software.com/product/pdf-xchange-editor/feature\_list

#### **Safety Feature**

As a last resort, if you try to use a **PRO** feature in **FREE** mode, the following dialog will appear:

PRO' Fe	eature Warning.
1	This is a feature of the PDF-XChange Editor PRO. You may use it in the FREE version - but it will result in DEMO(!) labels on your PDF pages if you save the file. To avoid this - please <u>upgrade</u> to a licensed 'PRO' release - see the Help file or visit our <u>web site</u> for more info. Are you sure you want to use this feature?
	୬ Yes ୬ No
Berneren	

- Click **Yes** and the feature will be used. If you then save the PDF it will have watermarks on each page.
   Click **No** and the feature will not be used.

# Switches for EXE installers

#### Command line Installation the PDF-XChange PDF Editor

Our binary 'EXE' installers support both 32 and 64 bit versions of MS Windows, whereas the MSI installers are separated into 32 or 64 Bit Windows installers as the Microsoft MSIN installer technology does not lend itself to a unified 32/64 bit installer type. If you are not sure if you have a 32/64 bit Windows operating system, please use either the EXE installer which will 'intelligently' make this choice for you - or use the 32 bit MSI installer as this will function correctly in both 32 or 64 bit Windows - albeit the 32 bit version will not take full advantage of your hardware/Windows capabilities and features available in Shell Extensions.

The latest downloads are available from our web site downloads page.

The PDF-XChange binary 'EXE' install file is downloaded as a 'ZIP' file from which you must extract the installer itself -: PDFXVE5.exe, whereas the MSI installers are offered without being 'wrapped' in ZIP archives.

# Here is an example of the full command line string available for the Binary 'EXE' type installers (see the MSI section if that is the installer of choice!):

Most items are optional unless otherwise stated

C:\PDFXVE5.exe /quiet /norestart SET\_AS\_DEFAULT=1 KEYFILE="\readable\path\to\licenseFile.xcvault"

#### Please note - parameters names are case sensitive. Broken down into sections - these are the switches and what each does:

SWITCHES	DESCRIPTION
MAIN install executable and path	This is the full path to the installation executable, note it is the standard install executable - both silent and non silent installations are available from the single executable. C:\PDFXVE5.exe
/install <directory></directory>	installs a complete local copy of the bundle in [directory]. Install is the default.
/repair <directory></directory>	repairs a complete local copy of the bundle in [directory].
/uninstall <directory></directory>	uninstalls a complete local copy of the bundle from [directory].
/passive	Displays minimal UI with no prompts during installation.
/quiet	Displays no UI and no prompts.
/norestart	Suppress any attempts to restart. Beware PDF-XChange may require a reboot before updates will take effect. By default UI will prompt before restart.
/log= <filename></filename>	Causes Setup to logs to a specific file. This can be a helpful debugging aid. The information contained in the log file is technical in nature and therefore not intended to be understandable by end users. Nor is it designed to be machine-parseable; the format of the file is subject to change without notice. /log "c:\logs\PDFXVE_INSTALL.txt"
SET_AS_DEFAULT=0 1	If parameter is specified and has a value other that 1, the Editor will not be set as default PDF application during installation. You can always set the Editor as default application later from the Editor's preferences.

VIEW_IN_BROWSERS=0 1	If specified and has value <b>1</b> , PDF files will be viewed in a browser. The view in browser option can also be turned on or off later via Editor's preferences.
KEYDATA= <serial_key></serial_key>	Allows the Serial Key to be registered during silent installation - for live use. Without this information PDF-XChange will function in demo mode only <u>Example:</u> PDFXVE5.exe /KEYDATA="PVP20- YDQsF/+TlsfTU3HHtVPAnfXcPnrZJFGhLFgbON4s+="
KEYFILE= <xcvault file=""></xcvault>	Allows the a license file (.xcvault) to be used for registration during silent installation by - for live use. A valid UNC path is required. Without this information PDF-XChange will function in demo mode only <u>Example:</u> PDFXVE5.exe /KEYFILE:"\path\to\xcvault\file.xcvault"
USERNAME= <name></name>	Allows the registered username to be specified during silent installation. <u>Example:</u> USERNAME="MY Name"
ORGANIZATION= <name></name>	Allows the Company details to be specified during silent installation. <u>Example:</u> ORGANIZATION="Tracker Software"
USEREMAIL= <email></email>	Allows the users email address details to be specified during silent installation. <u>Example:</u> USEREMAIL="my@email.com"
	Sets a language lang_id as the default language for the User Interface. <b>none</b> - installer will preserve current settings for UI language; it is a default value
	<b>auto</b> - Editor will choose localization language based on the user's localization settings of the OS
	<b>builtin</b> - Editor will be forced to do not use localization (use built in strings)
EDITOR_LANGUAGE= <lang_id></lang_id>	<li><langid> - Language ID of the language as shown in the ISO Code column in the list of available languages for the Editor (http://tracker- software.com/editor_lang); for example, de-DE - for German, uk-UA - for Ukrainian;</langid></li>
	Examples PDFXVE5.exe EDITOR_LANGUAGE="de-DE"
	msiexec.exe /i PDFXVE5.x86.msi
	EDITOR_LANGUAGE="fr-FR" msiexec.exe /i PDFXVE5.x64.msi EDITOR_LANGUAGE="it-IT"
DESKTOP_SHORTCUTS=0 1	If specified with value <b>1</b> , desktop icon(s) will be created during the installation.
PROGRAMSMENU_SHORTCUTS=0 1	If specified with value <b>1</b> , instructs Setup create a group for the PDF- XChange Editor in the Start menu.

#### Installation Command-line Examples

• Install the application in silent mode (no user input) without re-boot system:

PDFXVE5.exe /norestart /quiet

• Install the application in silent mode (no user input) with registration information:

PDFXVE5.exe /quiet KEYDATA="PVP20-YDQsF/+TlsfTU3HHtV...PAnfXcPnrZJFGhLFgbON4s+=" USERNAME="My Name" ORGANIZATION="Tracker software" USEREMAIL="my@email.com"

• Install the application for French, without any icons in Start Menu and desktop:

PDFXVE5.exe DESKTOP\_SHORTCUTS=0 PROGRAMSMENU\_SHORTCUTS=0 EDITOR\_LANGUAGE="fr-Fr"

• Install the PDF-XChange Editor as default viewer for PDF-files and allow to view PDF-files in browsers:

PDFXVE5.exe SET\_AS\_DEFAULT=1 VIEW\_IN\_BROWSERS=1

# Switches for MSI installers

#### Windows ® Installer. V 5.0.7100.0

#### Command-line for installation is:

msiexec /Option <Required Parameter> [Optional Parameter] [PROPERTY=PropertyValue]

#### Broken down into sections - these are the switches and what each does:

OPTIONS	PARAMETER	DEFINITION	
	Install Options		
/package or /i	<product.msi></product.msi>	Installs or configures a product	
/a	<product.msi></product.msi>	Administrative install - Installs a product on the network	
<b>∕j</b> <u m></u m>	<product.msi></product.msi>	Advertises a product - <b>m</b> to all users, <b>u</b> to current user. Additional parameters can be used: [/t <transform list="">] [/g <language id="">]</language></transform>	
/uninstall   /x	<product></product>	Uninstall the product. Parameter can be .msi file or Product Code.	
	Display Options		
/quiet		Quiet mode - Installs the application without user interaction	
/passive		Unattended mode - progress bar only	
<b>/q</b> [n b r f]		Sets user interface level: n - No UI b - Basic UI r - Reduced UI f - Full UI (default)	
	Restart Options		
/norestart		Do not restart after the installation is complete	
/promptrestart		Prompts the user for restart if necessary	
/forcerestart		Always restart the computer after installation	
Logging Options			

/1	<logfile></logfile>	Defines logging level for installation. Possible modifiers are: i - Status messages w - Nonfatal warnings e - All error messages a - Start up of actions r - Action-specific records u - User requests c - Initial UI parameters m - Out-of-memory or fatal exit information o - Out-of-disk-space messages p - Terminal properties v - Verbose output x - Extra debugging information + - Append to existing log file ! - Flush each line to the log * - Log all information, except for v and x options
/log	<logfile></logfile>	Equivalent of /I* <logfile></logfile>
	-	Repair Options
/f	<product></product>	<ul> <li>Repairs a product. Parameter is an .msi file or Product Code. May have the following modifiers:</li> <li>p - only if file is missing</li> <li>o - if file is missing or an older version is installed (default)</li> <li>e - if file is missing or an equal or older version is installed</li> <li>d - if file is missing or a different version is installed</li> <li>c - if file is missing or checksum does not match the calculated value</li> <li>a - forces all files to be reinstalled</li> <li>u - all required user-specific registry entries (default)</li> <li>m - all required computer-specific registry entries (default)</li> <li>s - all existing shortcuts (default)</li> <li>v - runs from source and recaches local package</li> </ul>

For additional options and more detailed description please refer to Microsoft Web Sites.

**Properties** Public properties defined by PDF-XChange installation may be specified as well as standard MSI public properties.

For complete list of standard public properties please refer to: http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-gb/library/aa370905(VS.85).aspx

Most useful properties are:

	Sta	ndard Properties
ADDLOCAL	<li>state</li>	<ul> <li>The value of the ADDLOCAL property is a list of features that are delimited by commas, and are to be installed locally. PDF-XChange Editor &amp; PDF-XChange PRO installers define the following features:</li> <li><b>F_Viewer</b> - PDF-XChange Editor and its components;</li> <li><b>F_Plugins</b> - Plugins modules for the Editor (requires F_Viewer). If F_Plugins is specified, the following features can be used to install plugin = install SpellChecker plugin. Requires F_Plugins</li> <li><b>F_FileOpenPlugin</b> – install plugin that provide support for file secured by FileOpen. Requires F_Plugins</li> <li><b>F_CREADULLOUPLUGIN</b> – install the plugin that provides read out loud functionality. Requires F_Plugins.</li> <li><b>F_OCRPlugin</b> – install plugin that allow OCR image based PDF files in the Editor. Requires F_Plugins.</li> <li><b>F_OotpimizerPlugin</b> - installs PDF Optimizer plugin. Requires F_Plugins.</li> <li><b>F_BookmarksPlugin</b> - installs advanced Bookmarks plugin. Requires F_Plugins.</li> <li><b>F_DFAPlugin</b> - installs PDF/A support plugin, Requires F_Plugins.</li> <li><b>F_DFAPlugin</b> - plug-ins for web browsers (MS Internet explorer, Mozilla FireFox, Opera, Safari, and Chrome) which allows to view PDF files inside these browsers. This feature requires F_Neplugin.</li> <li><b>F_IEPlugin</b> - IE plugin. Requires F_Seatures F_BrowserPlugins and F_Viewer.</li> <li><b>F_NPPlugin</b> - Firefox, Chrome and Opera plugin. Requires F_BrowserPlugins and F_Viewer.</li> <li><b>F_ShellExt</b> - Extensions for Windows Explorer and Windows shell. These extensions allow to view PDF files, handling preview of PDF files involve View PDF files, indide these browsers. This feature fulgin. Requires F_BrowserPlugins and F_Viewer.</li> <li><b>F_ShellExt</b> - Extensions for Windows Explorer and Windows shell. These extensions allow to view PDF files, indide these browsers. This feature fulgin. Requires F_BrowserPlugins and F_Viewer.</li> <li><b>F_Updater</b> - Update for Tracker products</li> <li><b>F_KeyInstaller</b></li></ul>
INSTALLLOCATION		Specifies the folder where products will be installed.
	Produc	t specific properties
SET_AS_DEFAULT		If not specified or specified and has value of "1", PDF- XChange Editor will be set as default application for PDF files.

VIEW_IN_BROWSERS		If not specified or specified and has value of "1", PDF- XChange Editor will be configured to open PDF files inside browsers
DESKTOP_SHORTCUTS		If not specified or specified and has value of "1", installer will place shortcuts for installed application on Desktop.
PROGRAMSMENU_SHORTCUTS		If not specified or specified and has value of "1", installer will create program menu group for installed application and their components.
USERNAME	<username></username>	Specifies the username for which applications will be registered.
ORGANIZATION	<oname></oname>	Specifies the organization name for which applications will be registered.
USERMAIL	<email></email>	Specifies the user email.
KEYFILE	<xcvault file&gt;</xcvault 	Specifies the UNC location of the license vault file <filename>.xcvault.</filename>
KEYDATA	<regkey></regkey>	Specifies registration key in plain text.
EDITOR_LANGUAGE= <id>*</id>	<id>*</id>	Specifies a language for the Editor. Requires F_Vlangs
NOUPDATER		If not specified or specified and has value of "0" Updater will be installed. A value of "1" will prevent Updater from being installed. (Available build 310)

\* <id> for your target language can be found here:

http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee825488(v=cs.20).aspx The "Language Culture Name" is used with EDITOR\_LANGUAGE. – E.g. for German use de-DE

#### Command-line Examples:

- Install the application in quiet mode (no user input) to folder "C:\Program Files\Tracker": msiexec /i PDFXVE5.x86.msi /quiet INSTALLLOCATION="C:\Program Files\Tracker"
- Install the application in quiet mode to default folder. Specify the user license info: msiexec /i PDFXVE5.x86.msi /quiet USERNAME="Dave" USERMAIL="abc@a.b.c" KEYFILE="\UNC\path\to\xcvaultfile"
- Install PDF-XChange Editor with all features, German language and a 'basic' UI during install. Note that because ADDLOCAL is not being used here then all componants including F\_VLangs are installed.
   msiexec /i PDFXVE5.x86.msi /qb EDITOR\_LANGUAGE="de-DE"
- Install PDF-XChange Editor with specific features only. Editor with Spellcheck and OCR plugins but not FileOpen or ReadAloud plugins, Browser plugins for only IE, German language and a 'basic' UI during install. Because ADDLOCAL is being called to install specific features then only those features explicitly called will be installed, so in this case F\_VLangs must be explicitly called :

```
msiexec /i PDFXVE5.x86.msi /qb
ADDLOCAL="F_Viewer,F_Plugins,F_Plugin_SP,F_OCRPlugin,F_VLangs,F_BrowserPlugins,F_IEPlugin"
EDITOR_LANGUAGE="de-DE"
```

## XCVault Utility - Network Administrators

#### **XCVault Utility Overview**

This utility can be used to install multiple license keys for Tracker's Products in one time, by processing special \*.xcvault files. The \*.xcvault file – is the container with list of license keys. In addition, the utility might be used to change protection mode for already installed license keys.

#### **Command Line Options**

#### /Install Command

Makes the utility as default handler for **\*.xcvault** files in the system. Requires administrative rights.

Example:

```
xcvault.exe /Install
```

#### /AddKeys Command

This command installs all license keys from **\*.xcvault** files.

#### Syntax:

```
xcvault.exe [/AddKeys] [/M|/S|/R] <xcvault_file>
```

#### Examples:

xcvault.exe /AddKeys "c:\Personal.xcvault"

xcvault.exe "c:\Personal.xcvault"

- /M when specified, new keys will be added in HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE registry section and administrative rights required.
- /R specifies that new keys should be added as unencrypted. It does not affect existing keys.
- /S specifies that command is not permitted to show any error/information message, i.e. it sets 'silent' mode.

#### /OpenKeys Command

This command removes protection for all installed protected license keys on the machine, i.e. - converts them to unencrypted and readable text. By default, for security reasons, the utility encrypts all newly added keys. Encrypted keys cannot be exported from registry and used on other machines. However, in special cases administrator may allow keeping that keys opened. This command might require administrator rights. In addition, the command sets in system registry special permanent flag that forces all Tracker's products to add new license keys without standard encryption.

#### Syntax:

```
xcvault.exe /OpenKeys [/M|/S]
```

#### Example:

xcvault.exe /OpenKeys

- /M when specified only keys stored in HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE registry section will be converted, otherwise all keys in both HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER and HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE sections will be converted. If option is not specified and the utility has no administrative rights, only HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER section will be processed.
- /S specifies that commands is not permitted to show any error/information message, i.e. it sets 'silent' mode.

#### /ProtectKeys Command

This command is opposite to the /OpenKeys command. It encrypts all installed license keys on the machine. Might require administrator rights.

#### Syntax:

```
xcvault.exe /ProtectKeys [/M|/S]
```

#### Example:

```
xcvault.exe /ProtectKeys
```

- /M when specified only keys stored in HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE registry section will be converted, otherwise all keys in both HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER and HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE sections will be converted. If option is not specified and the utility has no administrative rights, only HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER section will be processed.
- /S specifies that command is not permitted to show any error/information message, i.e. it sets 'silent' mode.

# Uninstalling the program

The PDF-XChange Editor may have been installed alone or as part of the PDF-XChange PRO package.

#### Windows XP

- In the Control Panel click Add/Remove Programs
- Find All instances of PDF-XChange Editor, PDF Editor, or PDF-XChange PRO by Tracker Software Products
- Click the **Remove** button and follow the instructions in the accompanying dialog boxes
- Restart your system

#### Windows Vista/Windows 7/Windows 8

- In the Control Panel click Programs and Features
- Find All instances of PDF-XChange Editor, PDF Editor, or PDF-XChange PRO by Tracker Software Products
- Click the Program so it is highlighted
- On the toolbar at the top, click **Uninstall** and follow the instructions in the accompanying dialog boxes
- Restart your system

The Program has now been removed from your system.

Please note that system folders and registry entries will still be on your system once the program is uninstalled. This is to allow users to keeps settings in tact as well as to eliminate the need to relicense upon reinstallation.

# Command Line option

#### Formal syntax

<anytext> - it means any text string.

```
<a>| <b> - means <a> or <b>
```

<filename> - full or relative path to file; when the path contains white spaces it should be enclosed in quotation marks. For example: c:\MyDocuments\MyTestDocument.pdf

but

"c:\My Documents\My Test Document.pdf"

50- // to process 50,51,... <LastPageNumber> pages -50 // to process first fifty pages

[expression] - means that expression is the optional part of command line. For example if syntax is:

/print[:[default[=yes|no]][&showui[=yes|no]]] <filename>
then will be correct:
/print "c:\example.pdf"
/print:default "c:\example.pdf"
/print:default&showui "c:\example.pdf"
/print:default=yes&showui=yes "c:\example.pdf"

#### /Print Command

Name:

/print

Description:

prints pages from specified document(s).

Syntax:

```
/print[:[default[=yes|no]][&showui[=yes|no]][&printer=<printername>][&pages=<pagesrange>]]
<filename1> [<filename2> ... <filenameN>]
```

Parameters:

- default if specified then default parameters(options) will be used for printing; by default application uses the last used printparameters.
- **showui** if specified then standard print dialogue will be displayed before printing; by default application prints pages silently, without UI.
- printer use it to specify necessary printer exactly, otherwise the default printer will be used.
- pages specify the pages range(s) that should be printed, otherwise all pages will be printed.

Example:

PDFXEdit.exe /print:default=yes&showui=yes&printer="PDF-XChange Printer" "c:\example.pdf"

#### /PrintTo Command

Name:

/printto

Description:

prints pages from specified document(s). The name of printer is required.

Syntax:

```
/printto[:[default[=yes|no]][&showui[=yes|no]][&pages=<pagesrange>]] <printername>
    <filename1> [<filename2> ... <filenameN>]
```

Parameters:

- **default** if specified then default parameters(options) will be used for printing; by default application uses the last printparameters.
- **showui** if specified then standard print dialogue will be displayed before printing; by default application prints pages silently, without UI.
- pages specify the pages range(s) that should be printed, otherwise all pages will be printed.

Note: if <printername> contains the white spaces then it should be enclosed in quotation marks.

Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /printto:default=yes&showui=yes "PDF-XChange Printer" "c:\example.pdf"
```

#### /ExportSettings Command

Name:

#### /exportsettings

Description:

exports settings of the application to a file on the disk; also you may use end-user's feature **Menu/Edit/Export Settings** Syntax:

/exportsettings[:<parameters>] <filename>

Parameters:

- settings specify it to export all application's settings. Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is true.
- stamps specify it to export all custom stamps collections. Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is false.
- history specify it to export documents opening history(recents). Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is true.
- pluginsdata to export advanced plugins data (example: custom dictionaries for SpellChecker plugin). Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is false.

Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /exportsettings "c:\PDFXChangeEditorSettings.xcs"
PDFXEdit.exe /exportsettings:history=no "c:\PDFXChangeEditorSettings.xcs"
PDFXEdit.exe /exportsettings:history=no&stamps=yes&pluginsdata=yes
"c:\PDFXChangeEditorSettings.xcs"
```

#### /ImportSettings Command

Name:

#### /importsettings

Description:

imports all settings from a file on the disk that was created by **/ExportSettings** command or by end-user's feature **Menu/Edit/Export Settings**; also you may use end-user's feature **Menu/Edit/Import Settings** 

Syntax:

/importsettings[:<parameters>] <filename>

Parameters:

- settings specify it to import all application's settings. Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is true.
- stamps specify it to import all custom stamps collections. Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is true.
- history specify it to import documents opening history(recents). Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false, merge.
   Default value is true. You may use merge value if you want to combine your existing history items with new ones during import.
- pluginsdata to import advanced plugins data (example: custom dictionaries for SpellChecker plugin). Supported values: yes, no, 1, 0, true, false. Default value is true.

Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /importsettings "c:\PDFXChangeEditorSettings.xcs"
PDFXEdit.exe /importsettings:history=merge "c:\PDFXChangeEditorSettings.xcs"
PDFXEdit.exe /importsettings:history=merge&stamps=yes&settings=no
"c:\PDFXChangeEditorSettings.xcs"
```

#### /ImportP Command

Name:

/importp

Description:

launch the application, imports application's settings from the specified file to current storage of settings: system registry or special settings file (for portable application only). The input file must be in a special format (see **/ExportP**).

NOTE: use new /ExportSettings and /ImportSettings command instead of old /ExportP and /ImportP. Syntax:

/importp <filename>

Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /importp "c:\PXCEditor.MySettings.dat"
```

#### /ExportP Command

Name:

/exportp

Description:

exports all application's settings to an specified file. It always creates a new file with special format and contains all non-default application's options.

NOTE: use new /ExportSettings and /ImportSettings command instead of old /ExportP and /ImportP.

Syntax:

/exportp <filename>

Example:

PDFXEdit.exe /exportp "c:\PXCEditor.MySettings.Backup.dat"

#### /UseP Command

Name:

/usep

Description:

instructs the application to use the input file as source of all settings.

Syntax:

/usep[:readonly[=yes|no]] <filename>

Parameters:

readonly – if specified then an input file with application's settings will be used for read only and not be changed on exit of
application.

Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /usep:readonly "c:\PXCEditor.MySettings.dat"
```

#### /A Command

Name:

/ A

Description:

opens document from an specified file and sets the custom view point, search words and highlight rectangles if necessary.

Syntax:

```
/A <param1>=<value1>[&<param2>=<value2>[&...]][=OpenParameters] <filename>
Parameters:
```

- nameddest = <destName> specifies a named destination in the PDF document.
- page=<pageNum> specifies a numbered page in the document, using an integer value. The document's first page has a
  pageNum value of 1.
- comment=<commentID> specifies a comment on a given page in the PDF document. Use the page parameter before this command. For example:

page=1&comment=452fde0e-fd22-457c-84aa-2cf5bed5a349

- zoom=<scale>[,<left>,<top>] sets the zoom and scroll factors, using float or integer values. For example, a scale value of 100 indicates a zoom value of 100%. Scroll values left and top are in a coordinate system where 0,0 represents the top left corner of the visible page, regardless of document rotation.
- view=Fit | FitH[,<top>] | FitV[,<left>] | FitB | FitBH[,<top>] | FitBV[,<left>] set the view of the displayed page, using the keyword values defined in the PDF language specification. For more information, see the PDF Reference. Scroll values left and top are floats or integers in a coordinate system where 0,0 represents the top left corner of the visible page, regardless of document rotation. Use the page parameter before this command.
- viewrect=<left>,<top>,<width>,<height> sets the view rectangle using float or integer values in a coordinate system where 0,0 represents the top left corner of the visible page, regardless of document rotation. Use the page parameter before this command.
- pagemode = < bookmarks | thumbs | none> displays bookmarks or thumbnails (none by default).
- scrollbar=1|0 turns scrollbars on or off.
- search=<wordList> opens the Search panel and performs a search for any of the words in the specified word list. All
  matching words are highlighted in the document. The words list must be enclosed in quotation marks and separated by spaces.
  For example:

search="word1 word2"

You can search only for single words. You cannot search for a string of words.

- highlight=<left>,<right>,<top>,<bottom> highlights a specified rectangle on the displayed page. Use the page
  parameter before it. The rectangle values are integers in a coordinate system where 0,0 represents the top left corner of the
  visible page, regardless of document rotation.
- fullscreen[=yes | no] when specified then document will be opened in Full Screen mode.
- password = <pppp assword > specify password string to open silently an password-protected document.
- usept[=yes|no] when specified then all values for positioning are absolute and measured in points(1/72 inch).

Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /A zoom=1000 "c:\example.pdf"
PDFXEdit.exe /A page=255&zoom=200&pagemode=thumbs&search="lazy dog" "c:\example.pdf"
```

#### /Open Command

Name:

/open

Description:

opens document from an specified file and sets the custom view point, searches words and highlights rectangles if necessary. Syntax:

/open[:<param1>=<value1>[&<param2>=<value2>...]]<filename1> [<filename2> ... <filenameN>]

Note: to simple open document(s) you may not specify the **/open** keyword: PDFXEdit.exe "c:\example1.pdf" "c:\example2.pdf" Parameters:

See to parameters list of **/A** command.

#### /Close Command

Name:

/close

Description:

closes already opened document by specified source file name

Syntax:

#### /close[:[mode=]save|discard|ask]

Parameters:

- mode=ask if document has been changed then asks user about save changes before closing.
- mode=discard close document silently, without asking about saving changes.
- mode=save if document has been changed then it saves changes silently before closing.

Note: mode=ask - is by default.

#### Example:

```
PDFXEdit.exe /close "c:\example.pdf"
PDFXEdit.exe /close:mode=save "c:\example.pdf"
PDFXEdit.exe /close:discard "c:\example.pdf"
```

#### /AddLang Command

Name:

#### /addlang

Description:

installs new UI-languages from special UI-languages pack. UI-languages pack is a zip-archive that contains one or more \*.xcl files.

Syntax:

/addlang[:[mode=]ask|user|all]] <filename>

Parameters:

- mode=ask asks user about installing mode: "for this user only" or "for all users on this machine". This is default mode.
- mode=user installs new UI-languages silently, for current user only.
- mode=all installs new UI-languages silently, for all users on target machine.

#### /RunJS Command

Name:

/runjs

Description:

launches the JavaScript.

Syntax:

/runjs[:log[=yes|no]] <scriptfilename> [<filename1> ... <filenameN>]

Parameters:

- log=yes | no if specified without any value or value is yes then application creates log of executing of this command. The log file \_RunJSLog.txt will be placed to the our program folder in user's location.
- <scriptfilename> full path to text file that containing the Adobe's JavaScript code.

Example:

```
// to add 'Draft' stamp to all pages in document
PDFXEdit.exe /runjs "c:\AddDraftStampToAllPages.txt" "c:\example.pdf"
```

```
// the file "c:\AddDraftStampToAllPages.txt" may contain text:
```

```
var numPages = this.numPages;
for (i = 0; i < numPages; i++)
{
    this.addAnnot({
        page: i,
        type: "Stamp",
        author: "Editor",
        name: "myStamp",
        rect: [200, 400, 350, 500],
        contents: "This page is draft!",
        AP: "Draft"
    });
}
app.execMenuItem("Save", this);
this.closeDoc(true);</pre>
```

# Keyboard Shortcuts

COMMAND*	KEYBOARD SHORTCUT	COMMAND*	KEYBOARD SHORTCUT
<u>A</u> ctual Size	Ctrl+0 ("zero" not letter "O")	Show/Hide <u>M</u> enu Bar	F9
<u>B</u> ookmarks	Ctrl+B	<u>N</u> ext Page	Right
Cl <u>e</u> ar	Delete	Next View	Alt+Right
<u>C</u> lockwise (CW)	Ctrl+Shift+Num +	<u>O</u> pen	Ctrl+O (letter "O" not numeric "zero")
<u>C</u> lose	Ctrl+W	Page	Ctrl+Shift+N
<u>C</u> omments	Ctrl+M	Pages <u>T</u> humbnails	Ctrl+T
<u>C</u> ontents	F1	<u>P</u> aste	Ctrl+V
<u>С</u> ору	Ctrl+C	Preferences	Ctrl+K
Counterclock <u>w</u> ise (CCW)	Ctrl+Shift+Num -	<u>P</u> revious Page	Left
<u>C</u> rop Pages	Ctrl+Shift+T	Previous View	Alt+Left
<u>C</u> ut	Ctrl+X	Print	Ctrl+P
<u>D</u> elete	Delete	Properties Toolbar	Ctrl+E
<u>D</u> elete Pages	Ctrl+Shift+D	<u>R</u> edo	Ctrl+Y
<u>D</u> ocument Properties	Ctrl+D	<u>R</u> otate Pages	Ctrl+Shift+R
F <u>i</u> elds	Ctrl+I	<u>S</u> ave	Ctrl+S
<u>F</u> ind	Ctrl+F	Save <u>A</u> s	Ctrl+Shift+S
Find Next	F3	<u>S</u> earch	Ctrl+Shift+F
Find Previous	Shift+F3	Se <u>l</u> ect All	Ctrl+A
Search Selected Text	Ctrl+F+F	Select Entire Page	Ctrl+A
Search Selected Text	Ctrl+Alt+F	Show/Hide All Bars	N/A
<u>F</u> irst Page	Home	Show/Hide Text Formatting Toolbar	Ctrl+E
Fit <u>P</u> age	Ctrl+1	<u>U</u> ndo	Ctrl+Z
Fit <u>W</u> idth	Ctrl+2	Zoom In	Ctrl+Num +
F <u>u</u> ll Screen	F11	Zoom Out	Ctrl+Num -
<u>L</u> ast Page	End	Zoom To	Ctrl+Shift+M
<u>L</u> ayers	Ctrl+L	Show/Hide Toolbar	F8

\*The <u>underlined</u> letter is the Alt hotkey for the command when opened in a menu. To create shortcut keys in the Editor one should right-click at the Tool Bars area and choose **Customize...** When the Customize dialog appears, shortcut keys can be created by changing Properties in the Commands field.

# PDF Editor Overview

When you first open the **PDF-XChange Editor**, it looks like this:



Although daunting at first glance, it is really quite simple to use.

The screen is subdivided into five major bands. From top to bottom they are:

- 1. Menu Bar. The program main menu. See Main menu.
- 2. Tool Bars. Toolbars for easy access to PDF display and modification tools. See Toolbars Area.
- 3. **Tab Bar**. Shows all open documents. The selected document is displayed brightly; the rest are grayed out. There is a **Close Document** button to the right of each document name.
- 4. Thumbnails. List of active document pages presented as miniature pages. See Thumbnails.
- 5. **Main Page Display Area**. The area in which the PDF files are displayed. This occupies most of the window. See **PDF Display Area**.

# PDF Display Area



- 1. PDF Document Tab(s). Permits quickly switching between loaded PDF files.
- 2. Thumbnails & Bookmarks. Allows you to quickly find the necessary page or section.
- 3. Main PDF Page Display Area. A place where the actual PDF content pages are displayed.

# Main Menu

Manual\* - PDF-XChange Editor File Edit View Document Comments Form Object Tools Advanced Window Help

The Main Menu is the primary control for the PDF-XChange Editor. The functional areas are:

MAIN MENU	DESCRIPTION	
File	File level operations including selecting files, document properties, forms data manipulation, and printing.	
Edit	Editing functions on PDF files and forms. Also program preferences can be set here.	
View	Editor information display control. Determines what PDF information is displayed and how.	
Document	Controls for Rotating, Deleting, or Cropping pages.	
Comments	Organizes the comments operations.	
Form	Manages Form Data.	
Object	Organizes the object operations.	
Tools	Selection of the different PDF tools, including Hand, Snapshot, and Zoom controls.	
Advanced		
Window	Organizes the layout of the PDF file window(s) currently opened.	
Help	Accesses help information about the Editor and its operation.	

Each menu area and item is discussed in detail its own section in the help file.

### File

The **File** menu controls the opening, saving, printing, and closing of PDF files, and the display of Document Properties.

🔁 Open	Ctrl+0 ►	
Copen From URL		
F Save	Ctrl+S	
Save As	Ctrl+Shift+S	
Save Copy As		
Save Optimized Co	ру	Open
Save All		Open from URL Save
PNew Document	•	New Document
Send by E-mail		Send by E-mail Revert
Revert		Close Export
Close	Ctrl+W	Print
Close All		Document Properties Copy Full File Name
Export	•	Open Containing Folde Exit
Print	Ctrl+P	
Document Properti	es Ctrl+D	
Copy Full File Name	e	
😬 Open Containing F	older	
Exit	Ctrl+Q	
## Open...

	a) (O:) 🕨 Image_Editor	<b>-</b> ↓ ↓	Search Image_Editor	
Organize 🔻 🛛 New folder			•	. 0
💯 Recent Places 🔺	Name		Date modified	Туре
🔚 Libraries	PDFVManual.pdf		11/21/2012 11:34	PDF Fi
Documents				
👌 Music				
E Pictures				
Videos 🗉				
🖳 Computer				
🏭 Local Disk (C:)				
👝 Data (D:)				
👝 Development (E:)				
Development (E:) ♀ f\$ (\\olesya) (O:)				
	e [	III		
🚅 f\$ (\\olesya) (0:)	e PDFVManual.pdf		PDF Documents (*.pdf)	•

**Open...** calls the Windows Open File dialog box to allow selection of a PDF file to be viewed.

Select the file to be viewed and click the **Open...** button.

Unpinned Recents displays a selection list of recently used files.

Clicking the pushpin to the right of the document name in the **Unpinned Recents** will "pin" the document and move it to the **Pinned Recents** list so that it won't "fall off" the list if the maximum number of documents in the **Recent Files** list is exceeded.

T	PDFXVE3man C:\Users\lesya\Desktop\Po6oтa\PDFXVE3man.pdf	۲	*
Unp	ninned Recents (4)		
1 1000	PDFX4DRV_API G:\XChange\Samples\PDFX4DRV_API.pdf	-124	×
Hour	PDFXTools4 G:\XChange\Samples\PDFXTools4.pdf	-jej	*
1.101046	PDFX4Man G:\XChange\Samples\PDFX4Man.pdf	-iei	×
1	Untitled G:\XChange\Samples\Untitled.pdf	-iei	34

When you mouse over a specific file from the list, the first page and other properties of the document are displayed:

	PDF-XChange Viewer 2.0
PDF-Scharge Viewer	Path: O:\PDFVManual.pdf File Size: 7 MB (7,337,581 bytes) Last Write Time: Wednesday, November 21, 2012, 11:34:23 AM Last Visit Time: Monday, December 24, 2012, 10:24:17 AM Visits Count: 1
Automaticana Autoria, and Handing and Autoria	Title: PDF-XChange Viewer 2.0 Subject: <none> Author: © 2008 Tracker Software Products Ltd Keywords: <none> Produce: PDF-XChange 4.0.188.0 (Windows Seven Ultimate x64 Service Pack 1 (Build Creator: PDF-XChange Office Addin Version: 1.4 PDF-Form: <none></none></none></none>
CORE OF THE REPORT OF THE CORE OF THE CORE	Pages Count: 209

To adjust the history and recents options open the Manage History and Recents... dialog.

Max. number of item:	s: 5000 📋 🗘
Item's life-time	
	Clear history on Exit
	History contains 5 items
ecents List Options	
Show max. number of items	50 ≎
🗹 Show thumbnail	Show file-path

- 1. History Options.
  - 1. Max. number of items. You can set the maximum number of documents to be displayed in the Recent documents list.
  - 2. Item's life-time. Defines how long the unpinned documents remain in the list.
  - 3. Clear history on exit. Clears the history list completely on exit.
- 2. Recents List Options.
  - 1. Show max. number of items. The maximum number of items will be displayed in the Recents list.
  - 2. Show thumbnail. Displays the thumbnails of the documents listed in the Recents.
  - 3. Show caption.
  - 4. Show file-path. Displays the file path of the documents listed in the Recents.
  - 5. Cache thumbnails.

# Open from URL...

**Open from URL...** allows you to open PDF files over a network or the Internet. When selected, the following dialog appears:

💋 Open a Web Link		X
Type the URL:		
	<u>о</u> к	Cancel

By entering a valid PDF URL in the entry field and clicking **OK**, the selected PDF will open.

### Save

Save is only available if the currently displayed PDF file has been modified in any way.

#### Warning! It immediately saves the modified PDF over the original! There is NO warning of any kind!

If you wish to preserve the original file then use the **Save As...** option to save the modified version to a new file name.

### Save As...

Save As allows you to save the currently displayed PDF file to a different name. The file does NOT have to be modified to use this setting.

Organize 🔻 New fold	ter > f\$ (\\olesya) (O:) > - 49	Search f\$ (\\olesya) (O:)	م 0
Documents Music Pictures Videos Computer Local Disk (C:) Data (D:) Development (E:) Choose (Colored)	Name Diff Image_Editor Images_Lite Images_Standard Ms Work_copy_12_03_2012 PDFVManual.pdf PDFX4Man.pdf	Date modified 12/24/2012 10:53 12/24/2012 10:47 4/10/2012 5:35 PM 4/10/2012 10:03 AM 12/24/2012 10:53 3/12/2012 11:55 AM 11/21/2012 11:34 6/3/2011 11:28 AM	Type File folde File folde File folde File folde File folde PDF File PDF File
	< III VManual Documents		, •

Enter the new file name in the File name field and click Save.

The Editor will:

- 1. Save document with new name.
- 2. Close original file.
- 3. Open new saved document.

### Save Copy As...

Save Copy As... opens the Save dialog with the File name: field set to the name of the currently displayed PDF file with the word "Copy" appended. See below.

) 🔾 🗣 🖡 Compute	er ▶ f\$ (\\olesya) (0:) ▶ 🗸 🗸	Search f\$ (\\olesya) (O:)	Q
Organize 🔻 New folde	er	:=	?
Documents *	Name	Date modified	Туре
J Music	🔒 Diff	12/24/2012 10:53	File fold
Pictures	Image_Editor	12/24/2012 10:54	File fold
🛃 Videos	퉬 Images_Lite	4/10/2012 5:35 PM	File fold
<b>.</b>	🌗 Images_Standard	4/10/2012 10:03 AM	File fold
Computer	🍌 Ms	12/24/2012 10:53	File fold
Local Disk (C:)	Work_copy_12_03_2012	3/12/2012 11:55 AM	File fold
□ Data (D:)	DFVManual.pdf	11/21/2012 11:34	PDF File
☐ Development (E:)	DFX4Man.pdf	6/3/2011 11:28 AM	PDF File
🗣 Network 🗸	•		
File <u>n</u> ame: PDFV	Manu (Copy)		-
Save as type: PDF D	ocument		•
	T		
Hide Folders	Options	. Save Car	icel

To save the file with this name, click **Save**; otherwise you may change the name as desired and click **Save**.

### Save Optimized Copy...

3	PDF Optin	nizer	
Settings: <custom></custom>			Audit space usage
Current PDF Version: 1.4		Make compatible with:	Retain existing
<b>√</b> Images	Color Images		
Fonts	Bicubic Downsampling to	👻 150 dpi	for images above: 225 dpi
<b>V</b> Discard Objects	Compression: JPEG	- Quality:	Medium 👻
🗹 Discard User Data	Grayscale Images		
🗹 Clean Up	Bicubic Downsampling to	- 150 dpi	for images above: 225 dpi
	Compression: JPEG	- Quality:	Medium 👻
	Indexed Images		
	Subsampling to		for images above: 225 dpi
	Compression: ZIP	-	
	Monochrome Images		
	Bicubic Downsampling to		for images above: 450 dpi
	Compression: JBIG2	-	
			All units are in pixels per inch
	Optimize images only if t	here is a reduction in size	
			<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ance
			<u></u> ance

There are many options available for each section of the "PDF Optimizer" dialog.

- Images
- Fonts
- Discard Objects
- Discard User data
- Clean up

#### Images:

In the images section, you are given the ability to adjust downsampling, dpi, compression type, and quality for Colour, Grayscale, Indexed, and monochrome images. At the bottom, you will see the option "Optimize images only if there is a reduction in size". Choose that option to avoid any unnecessary loss of quality.

### Fonts:

arialMT (Subset)		Symbol (Subset)
ieneva (Subset)		
	Unembed >	
	<< Retain	

In this section, you can choose to unembed fonts from a PDF. An embedded font allows computers without that font to correctly display the PDF. If the font is not embedded, it will need to be installed on the computer for the document to be displayed as intended. In such cases where the font is not available to the PC, the PDF-XChange Editor will automatically use a substitution font which closely matches the original.

#### **Discard Objects:**



Selected options will be stripped from the PDF.

#### Discard User data:



This will remove the selected information from the PDF.

#### Clean Up:



Removes some unneeded duplication and other miscellaneous options are available here.

#### Save All

### N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.

Save All will save all opened documents. It is only available if the PDF files have been modified in any way.

Warning! It immediately saves the modified PDF over the original! There is NO warning of any kind!

### New Document

**New Document...** allows you to create a new PDF document from a blank page, from a text file, from RTF file, image file or directly from scanner.

#### IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information!

Selecting this option first takes you to the **New Document...** options submenu:

Vith Blank Pages
rombine Files into a Single PDF rom Text File
rom Rich Text Format (RTF) File rom Image File(s)
rom Scanner

### With Blank Pages...

Clicking the With Blank Pages... option opens the New Empty Document dialog box:

	A4 (505.2	041.0					
Standard:	A4 (595.3		SCOLON.		-		
O Custom:	595.3 pt	\$	x	841.9 pt	\$	point	+
Orientation	Portrait				-		
Count	1	\$					

- 1. Pages. Specifies the description of the pages in the new document.
  - 1. Standard. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
  - 2. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the page.
  - 3. **Orientation**. Sets the orientation of the page.
    - 1. **Portrait**. The longer side of the page runs vertically.
      - 2. Landscape. The longer side of the page runs horizontally.
  - 4. Count. Defines the number of empty pages to be created.

# Combine Files into a Single PDF...

Combine Files into a single PDF... allows you to create one file out of many others.

You can set the page range to be added to the file. The file list may be sorted or deleted. The bookmarks are added into the created PDF file.

Title	Location	Size	Modified	Pages Count	-	Pages Range	
PDF documentl(1).pdf PDF documentl(2).pdf	-		14.10.2013, 1		215.9 x 279.4 215.9 x 279.4	-	
🍌 Add Files 🔻	Add F	older		Page Rar	nge Options		· · ·

- 1. **Source Files**. Selects the PDF files which should be combined. It is possible to delete and sort files in the list.
- 2. Add files.... Opens the Open Files dialog box to select a necessary document. After you click an arrow, you will be able to select the Add All Opened Documents option or choose only one opened document.
- Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to select a file from. After clicking an arrow, you will see Options option, which opens the Add Files From Folder Options dialog. Here you can customize the options, create, edit or remove custom filters or apply standard filters for choosing file types which should be added while searching folders.

🖌 Look in the sub-fo 🖌 Choose file types v		while searching folders:
Add Custom Filter	Edit Custom Filter	Remove Custom Filter
Custom Filters		A
Standard Filters		=
-		
M All Supported File	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr
✓ All Supported File ∴apm	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr
	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr
*.apm	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr
*.apm *.bmp	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr
*.apm *.bmp *.dcx	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr
*.apm *.bmp *.dcx *.dib	s (*.pdf;*.xps;*.oxps;*.b	mp;*.dib;*.rle;*.gif;*.ico;*.jbg;*.jb2;*.pbr

4. **Page Range Options...** Opens the Setup Pages Range dialog which allows you to specify the page(s) to be combined into one file.

<ul> <li><u>A</u>II</li> </ul>				
Selected Pages				
Current Page				
O Pages:		i	(total <b>209</b> pa	ges)
Subset:	II Pages	-		

- Up. Moves the selected file up in the list.
   Down. Moves the selected file down in the list.
- 7. **Remove**. Removes the selected file from the list.

# From Text File...

Clicking the From Text File... option opens the Convert text files to PDF dialog box:

Title	Exte	Location	Size	Modified	Info		
Project	txt	\\olesya\F\$\Samples_E	0.08 KB	4/5/2013, 1:32:19 P	Unknown (20127)		
Note	txt	\\olesya\F\$\Samples_E	0.08 KB	4/5/2013, 1:32:26 P	Unknown (20127)		
Add file		Add Folder					A V
		Add Folder					A <b>T</b>
Add file:	ns	Add Folder		*			<u> </u>
elected File Option	ns	ng: Undefined		-		~	A V (

- 1. Source Text Files. Selects the text files for the new document to be created from.
  - 1. Add files.... Opens the Open Files dialog box to select a text file from.
  - 2. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to add/select all text files contained in the selected folder.
  - 3. Up. Moves the selected file up in the list.
  - 4. Down. Moves the selected file down in the list.
  - 5. Remove. Removes the selected file from the list.
  - 6. Selected File Options. Allows you to set the appropriate file options.
    - 1. **Text Encoding**. Allows you to choose the appropriate text encoding.
    - 2. **New Paragraph Mode**. Defines the placing of the new paragraphs in the PDF document. The fields are self-explanatory.
      - 1. Auto Detect.
      - 2. Each newline character starts a new paragraph.
      - 3. Double newline character starts a new paragraph, singles ignored.
      - 4. Double newline character starts a new paragraph, singles converted to space.
    - 3. **Place File Mode**. Allows you to choose the way each file will be placed. The fields are selfexplanatory.
      - 1. Start each file from new paragraph.
      - 2. Start each file from new page.
- 2. **Options...**. Defines additional settings for the text files.
  - 1. New Page Options. Allows you to set the page options.

Categories		N	ew Page	Options		
New Page Options	Standard:	A4 (595.3 x 841	l.9 pt)		-	
Text Format File Separator	O Custom:	595.3 pt	\$ × (	841.9 pt :	¢ point	Ŧ
	Orientation: Page Rotation:					
	Margins					
	Left:	28.3 pt	\$	Right:	28.3 pt	\$
	Тор:	28.3 pt	\$	Bottom:	28.3 pt	\$

- 1. Standard. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
- 2. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the page.
- 3. **Orientation**. Sets the orientation of the page.
  - 1. **Portrait**. The longer side of the page runs vertically.
  - 2. Landscape. The longer side of the page runs horizontally.
- 4. **Margins**. Margins adjust the size of the page by setting non-zero margins using the units. The adjustments are:
  - 1. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in units.
  - 2. Right. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in units.
  - 3. Top. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in units.
  - 4. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in units.

New Page Options	
terringe options	Text Style
Text Format	Font Paragraph
File Separator	Columns          Number of columns:       Space between columns:       Units:         1       7.1 mm       millimeter         ✓       Line between columns:       millimeter         Style:       Solid       Thickness:         0.4 mm       Color:       Thickness:

2. Text Format. Allows you to put the text files into columns and define the settings of the columns. The fields are self-explanatory.

3. File Separator. Allows you to apply the separator for new text files and specify its options.

2 Options	ि <mark>×</mark>
Categories	File Separator
New Page Options Text Format File Separator	<ul> <li>✓ Show title:</li> <li>Back color: ★ None ▼</li> <li>Font Paragraph</li> <li>✓ Draw line:</li> <li>Style: Solid ▼</li> <li>Thickness: 1 pt ↓</li> <li>Color: ▼</li> <li>Place line above header</li> </ul>
	<u>OK</u>

- 1. Show title. Shows the title header to separate each file. You may enter any valid name you like.
  - 1. In addition, clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names. The fields are self-explanatory
  - 2. **Back color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog to allow you to customize the background color for the header.
  - 3. Font.... Specifies the font settings for the header.
  - 4. Paragraph.... Specifies the paragraph settings for the header.
- 2. Draw line. Allows you to draw a line that would separate files one from another and specify the line's appearance.
  - 1. Place line above header. The line will be placed above the header.

# From Rich Text Format (RTF) File...

Clicking the From Rich Text Format (RTF) File... option opens the Convert RTF files to PDF dialog box:

Title	Exte	Location	Size	Modified	
New Doc	rtf	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\S	0.01 KB	12/24/2012, 12:01:4	
Text Doc	rtf	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\S	0.01 KB	12/24/2012, 12:01:0	
Add files		Add Folder			× -

- 1. Rich Text Format Files. Selects the text files for the new document to be created from.
  - 1. Add files.... Opens the Open Files dialog box to select a text file from.
  - 2. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to select a text file from.
  - 3. Up. Moves the selected file up in the list.
  - 4. Down. Moves the selected file down in the list.
  - 5. **Remove**. Removes the selected file from the list.
- 2. **Options...** Defines additional settings for the text files.

Options	8 ×
Categories	Relative path options
Relative path	Relative path mode:
	Keep existing -
	Replace relative documents extensions
	OK Cancel

- 1. Relative path. Allows you to set the relative path options.
  - 1. Relative path mode. Defines the RTF document.
    - 1. Keep existing. Does not change the relative paths.
    - 2. Make absolute. Makes the relative paths absolute.
    - 3. Make relative. Makes the relative paths relative.
  - 2. **Replace relative documents extensions**. If checked, PDF document will be created also out of the RTF file which is a relative document to the current RTF file.

# From Image File(s)...

Clicking the From Image File(s)... option opens the Images To PDF dialog box:

Title	Exte	Location	Size	Modified	Info	
sshot-01	png	G:\XChange\Image_Edi	220,16 KB	24.12.2012, 8:26:26	1 page(s), 684 x 485 px, 24 bpp, 96 x-dpi, 96	y
sshot-02	png	G:\XChange\Image_Edi		, 0,2000	1 page(s), 549 x 322 px, 24 bpp, 96 x-dpi, 96	,
Add Files		Add Folder 📄 🖃 Im	port 👻	<u>E</u> dit		

- 1. Source image files. Selects the image files for the new document to be created from.
  - 1. Add files.... Opens the Open dialog box to select an image file from.
  - 2. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to select an image file from.
  - 3. Import.... Opens the list of scanners installed on your computer.
  - 4. Edit.... Opens the Edit Image dialog box which allows you to modify the selected image.



- 1. Flip Horizontal button is used to rotate an image about a vertical axis through the center of the image.
- 2. Flip Vertical button is used to rotate an image about a horizontal axis through the center of the image.
- 3. Rotate 90 CCW button rotates the image by 90 degrees counterclockwise.

- 4. Rotate 90 CW button rotates the image by 90 degrees clockwise.
- 5. Apply Filter.
- 6. Convert to.
- 7. Grayscale.
- 8. Deskew.
- 9. Fit Visible button fits the image within the borders of the view pane.
- 10. Zoom In button increases the Zoom percentage of the image.
- 11. **Zoom Out** button decreases the Zoom percentage of the image.
- 5. Up. Moves the selected file up in the list.
- 6. **Down**. Moves the selected file down in the list.
- 7. Remove. Removes the selected file from the list.
- 8. The Change view mode button opens the list of views to be selected for viewing the files list.

¥		Details
		Icons
	-	Thumbnails

- 1. **Options...** Defines additional settings for the new document.
  - 1. New Page Options. Allows you to set the page options.

Images To PDF Options	2 <b>x</b>
Categories	New Page Options
Categories New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	New Page Options     Choose Paper Size by Image Size     Standard:   A4 (210 x 297 mm)     Custom:   210 mm   *   Page Rotation:   Don't rotate     Margins   Left:   0 mm   *   Bottom:   0 mm
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

- 1. Choose Paper Size by Source. This option specifies the size of the page by the source.
- 2. Standard. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
- 3. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the page.
- 4. Orientation. Sets the orientation of the page.
  - 1. **Portrait**. The longer side of the page runs vertically.
  - 2. Landscape. The longer side of the page runs horizontally.

- 5. Page Rotation. Allows you to rotate the page. The fields are self-explanatory.
  - 1. Don't rotate.
  - 2. Clockwise 90 degrees.
  - 3. 180 degrees.
  - 4. Counterclockwise 90 degrees.
- 6. **Margins**. Margins adjust the size of the page by setting non-zero margins using the selected "user units." The adjustments are:
  - 1. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in Units.
  - 2. Right. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in Units.
  - 3. **Top**. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in Units.
  - 4. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in Units.
- 2. Images Layout Options. Allows you to set the image layout options.

Categories	Images Layout Options
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels	Layout Rules       Columns:     1       Rows:     1       Columns:     4,2 mm       \$     \$       Space between Columns:     4,2 mm
Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	Align Images Fit: Reduce to Cell  Keep aspect ratio: Vertical alignment: Middle

- 1. Layout Rules. Sets the layout rules options.
  - 1. Horizontal count. Specifies the number of columns for the horizontal layout.
  - 2. Vertical count. Specifies the number of columns for the horizontal layout.
  - 3. Horizontal space. Controls the amount of horizontal space around an image.
  - 4. Vertical space. Controls the amount of vertical space around an image.
- 2. Align Images. Sets the image alignment.
  - 1. Fit. When checked, the image will be sized to fit the new PDF page.
  - 2. Keep aspect ratio. Depends on Fit. When checked, the image will be resized to fit the new PDF page, but there will be no distortion of the page.
  - Horizontal alignment. Sets the horizontal alignment of the images.
     1. Left.

- 2. Center.
- 3. Right.
- 4. Vertical alignment. Sets the vertical alignment of the images.
  - 1. Top.
  - 2. Middle.
  - 3. Bottom.
- 3. Labels. Allows you to set the image label options.

Images To PDF Options	5 ×
Categories	Image Labels
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels	Image Label          Image Label
Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	Back color: None Paragraph Font Place label above image Add bookmark for each image with the same text as label
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

- 1. Image Label. Allows you to add a text label for the image.
  - 1. Use special text label for each image. Specifies the text label for each file. You may enter any valid name you like.
    - Macros. Clicking the Macros button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names. The fields are self-explanatory.
  - 2. Back color. Opens the standard color selection dialog for you to customize the background color for the image label.
  - 3. Paragraph.... Specifies the paragraph settings for the text label.
  - 4. Font.... Specifies the font settings for the text label.
  - 5. Place label above image. If checked, the label will be placed above the image.
  - 6. Add bookmark for each image with the same text as label. If checked, a bookmark will be created for all images with the same text as label.

Categories	Image Processir	ng	
lew Page Options	True Color		
mages Layout Options	No Downsampling 👻	96	pixels per inch
mage Labels	for images above:	128	pixels per inch
Image Processing	No Conversion 👻	📝 Dither	ing
Image Compression Image Post-processing	Grayscale		
image rost-processing	No Downsampling 👻	96	pixels per inch
	for images above:	128	pixels per inch
	No Conversion 👻	📝 Dither	ing
	Indexed		
	No Downsampling 👻	96	pixels per inch
	for images above:	128	pixels per inch
	No Conversion 👻	📝 Dithe	ing
	Monochrome		
	No Downsampling 👻	96	pixels per inch
	for images above:	128	pixels per inch
	No Conversion 👻		

4. Image Processing. Allows you to set the options of image's downsampling and conversion.

- 1. **True Color**. Applies image downsampling and conversion options for true color images.
- 2. Grayscale. Applies downsampling or conversion options for high color and grayscale images.
- 3. Indexed. Applies downsampling or conversion options for indexed images.
- 4. Monochrome. Applies downsampling or conversion options for monochrome images.
  - 1. **Downsampling**. Downsampling decreases the number of pixels in an image. To downsample images, choose a downsampling method (linear, bilinear, or bicubic downsampling) and enter the desired resolution (in pixels per inch). Then enter a resolution in the for images above text box.
    - 1. **No Downsampling**. Allows you to disable downsampling if the PDF file is to be printed at high resolution.
    - Linear Downsampling to. The classical linear downsampling approach is based on the removal from the original image of those frequencies which are too high to be represented at a lower resolution level.
    - 3. **Bilinear Downsampling to**. Adds pixels by averaging the color values of surrounding pixels. It produces results of medium quality.
    - Bicubic Downsampling To. Is a more precise downsampling method based on an examination of the values of surrounding pixels. Using more complex calculations, Bicubic downsampling produces smoother tonal gradations than Linear or Bilinear ones.
  - 2. Conversion. Allows you to change the images' color mode for grayscale, monochrome or black & white.
    - 1. No Conversion. No images will be converted.
    - 2. Convert to Grayscale. Images will be converted to grayscale.
    - 3. Convert to Monochrome. Images will be converted to monochrome.

- 4. Convert to Black & White. Images will be converted to black & white.
- 5. **Dithering**. When the Dithering option is selected, Photoshop mixes colors in the destination color space to simulate a missing color that existed in the source space. Although dithering helps to reduce the blocky or banded appearance of an image.
- 5. **Deskew**. If checked, it will straighten a skew scanned image.
- 5. Image Compression. Allows you to set the image compression options.

Images To PDF Options	8 <mark>×</mark>
Categories	Image Compression
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels	True Color Compression enabled Auto JPEG Quality: 75 Cossless
Image Processing Image Compression	Grayscale
Image Post-processing	JPEG Quality: 75 🗘 Lossless
	Indexed
	Monochrome
	✓ Compression enabled Auto
	<u>O</u> K <u>Cancel</u>

- 1. True Color. Applies image compression options for true color images.
- 2. Grayscale. Applies compression options for high color and grayscale images.
- 3. Indexed. Applies compression options for indexed images.
- 4. Monochrome. Applies compression options for monochrome images.
- 1. **Compression enabled**. If checked, it will compress image content depending on the image compression options selected.
  - 1. **Auto**. The best compression settings will be chosen on your behalf whilst retaining reasonable image quality.
  - 2. JPEG. Best used for colored images.
  - 3. Flate. Is used for text, graphics and images.
  - 4. JPEG/ZIP.
  - 5. JPEG 2000.
  - 6. JPEG 2000/ZIP.
- 2. JPEG Quality. A percentage value determining image content quality over compression the higher the value entered the lower the compression setting applied and image quality is retained to a higher degree lower values make smaller files.

6. Image Post-processing.

Images To PDF Options	8	x
Categories	Image Post-Processing options	
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	☐ Deskew ☐ Despeckle ✔ Run OCR OCR Settings	
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> and	cel

- 1. Deskew.
- Despeckle.
   Run OCR.

gnition				
Primary <u>L</u> anguage:		-	More Lang	juages
Accuracy:	Medium	-		
		0	ĸ	Cancel

## From Scanner...

Clicking the From Scanner... option opens the following menu:

Autodetect Color Mode	
Color Document	
Black & White Document	
Grayscale Document	
Color Image	
Custom Scan	
Configure Presets	

The **Custom Scan...** option opens the **Scan Properties** dialog box:

	Scanner Settings: <custom></custom>	
Parameters		
Scanner:		
Data Transfer Method:		Show Native U
Color Mode:		-
Resolution:		-
Paper Size:		<u>S</u> etup
Source:		-
Sides:	Both Sides	-
Scan More Pages:	Ask user 👻 5	seconds
	Show Images Insertion Dialog	
	Images Insertion Options	
	<u>S</u> can	<u>C</u> anc

- 1. Scanner Settings.
- 2. Parameters. Sets the parameters for scanning.
  - 1. Scanner. Selects the scanner on which to scan the document.
  - 2. Data Transfer Method. Specifies in what way the data from scanner are received. There are two ways of transferring data:

Native

The Source allocates a single block of memory and writes the image data into the block. It passes a pointer to the application indicating the memory location. The application is responsible for freeing the memory after the transfer. Memory

The transfer occurs through memory using one or more buffers. Memory for the buffers are allocated

and deallocated by the application. With the Memory mode, the application may need to loop repeatedly to obtain more than one buffer of data. Memory transfer offers the greatest flexibility, both in data capture and control. However, it is the least simple to implement.

- 3. Color Mode. Allows you to choose the color mode.
- Resolution. Sets the desired 'DPI' (Dots per inch) for the file pages. This can be any value from 50 to 2400 DPI - though this is also MS Windows OS dependent; some earlier Versions of Windows do not support DPI settings of such high values.
- 5. Paper Size. Allows you to choose an appropriate paper size.
- 6. Source.
- 7. Sides. Sets the scanning side. The options are:
  - 1. Both Sides. Scans both sides of pages.
  - 2. Front Sides. Scans only front sides of pages.
- 8. Scan More Pages. Lets you select one of the following options:
  - 1. **Disabled**. Disables the scanning of more pages.
  - 2. Ask user. When scanning is finished, you will be asked if you want to scan more pages.
  - 3. Automatically after. When the scanning session is finished, the next one will start automatically.
- 9. Show Images Insertion Dialog.
- 10. Images Insertion Options.... Defines additional image insertion options for the new document.
  - 1. New Page Options. Allows you to set the page options.

Categories	New Page Options
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing Image Compression	<ul> <li>Choose Paper Size by Image Size</li> <li>Standard: A4 (595.3 × 841.9 pt) ▼</li> <li>Custom: 595.3 pt ‡ × 841.9 pt ‡ point ▼</li> <li>Orientation: Portrait ▼</li> <li>Page Rotation: Don't rotate ▼</li> </ul>
Image Post-processing	Margins Left: 0 pt  Top: 0 pt Dopt Dopt Dopt Dopt Dopt Dopt Dopt Do
	QK <u>C</u> ancel

1. Choose Paper Size by Source. This option specifies the size of the page by the source.

For a printer with multiple paper sources, the one closest in size to the PDF document pages will be chosen.

- 2. Standard. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
- 3. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the page.

- 4. Orientation. Sets the orientation of the page.
  - 1. Portrait. The longer side of the page runs vertically.
  - 2. Landscape. The longer side of the page runs horizontally.
- 5. Page Rotation. Allows you to rotate the page. The fields are self-explanatory.
  - 1. Don't rotate.
  - 2. Clockwise 90 degrees.
  - 3. 180 degrees.
  - 4. Counterclockwise 90 degrees.
- 6. **Margins**. Margins adjust the size of the page by setting non-zero margins using the selected "user units." The adjustments are:
  - 1. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in Units.
  - 2. Right. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in Units.
  - 3. Top. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in Units.
  - 4. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in Units.
- 2. Images Layout Options. Allows you to set the image layout options.

Categories	Images Layout Options
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing	Layout Rules Columns: 1   Columns: 1  Columns: 1  Columns: 1   Columns: 1  Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Columns: 1   Colum
Image Compression Image Post-processing	Fit: Reduce to Cell   Horizontal alignment: Center  Keep aspect ratio: Vertical alignment: Middle

- 1. Layout Rules. Sets the layout rules options.
  - 1. Horizontal count. Specifies the number of columns for the horizontal layout.
  - 2. Vertical count. Specifies the number of columns for the horizontal layout.
  - 3. Horizontal space. Controls the amount of horizontal space around an image.
  - 4. Vertical space. Controls the amount of vertical space around an image.
- 2. Align Images. Sets the image alignment.
  - 1. Fit. When checked, the image will be sized to fit the new PDF page.
  - 2. **Keep aspect ratio**. Depends on Fit. When checked, the image will be resized to fit the new PDF page, but there will be no distortion of the page.
  - 3. Horizontal alignment. Sets the horizontal alignment of the images.
    - 1. Left.
    - 2. Center.

- 3. Right.
- 4. Vertical alignment. Sets the vertical alignment of the images.
  - 1. Top.
  - 2. Middle.
  - 3. Bottom.
- 3. Image Labels. Allows you to set the image label options.

Categories	Image Labels
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels	Image Label
Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	Back color: X None  Paragraph Font Place label above image Add bookmark for each image with the same text as label

- 1. **Image Label**. Allows you to add a text label for the image.
  - 1. Use special text label for each image. Specifies the text label for each file. You may enter any valid name you like.
    - Macros. Clicking the Macros button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names. The fields are self-explanatory.
    - 2. **Back color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog for you to customize the background color for the image label.
    - 3. Paragraph.... Specifies the paragraph settings for the text label.
    - 4. Font.... Specifies the font settings for the text label.
    - 5. Place label above image. If checked, the label will be placed above the image.
    - 6. Add bookmark for each image with the same text as label. If checked, a bookmark will be created for all images with the same text as label.

Categories	Image Processing	9		
Vew Page Options	Downsampling and Conversion			
images Layout Options	True Color			
image Labels	Downsampling			
image Processing	No Downsampling -	96	\$	pixels per inch
Image Compression Image Post-processing	for images above:	128	\$	pixels per inch
	Conversion			
	No conversion 👻	📝 Dit	hering	9

4. Image Processing. Allows you to set the options of image's downsampling and conversion.

- 1. Downsampling and Conversion.
  - True Color. Applies image downsampling and conversion options for true color images.
  - **Grayscale**. Applies downsampling or conversion options for high color and grayscale images.
  - Indexed. Applies downsampling or conversion options for indexed images.
  - Monochrome. Applies downsampling or conversion options for monochrome images.
- 2. **Downsampling**. Downsampling decreases the number of pixels in an image. To downsample images, choose a downsampling method (linear, bilinear, or bicubic downsampling) and enter the desired resolution (in pixels per inch). Then enter a resolution in the for images above text box.
  - 1. **No Downsampling**. Allows you to disable downsampling if the PDF file is to be printed at high resolution.
  - 2. Linear Downsampling to. The classical linear downsampling approach is based on the removal from the original image of those frequencies which are too high to be represented at a lower resolution level.
  - 3. **Bilinear Downsampling to**. Adds pixels by averaging the color values of surrounding pixels. It produces results of medium quality.
  - Bicubic Downsampling To. Is a more precise downsampling method based on an examination of the values of surrounding pixels. Using more complex calculations, Bicubic downsampling produces smoother tonal gradations than Linear or Bilinear ones.
- 3. Conversion. Allows you to change the images' color mode for grayscale, monochrome or black & white.
  - 1. No Conversion. No images will be converted.
  - 2. Convert to Grayscale. Images will be converted to grayscale.
  - 3. Convert to Monochrome. Images will be converted to monochrome.
  - 4. Convert to Black & White. Images will be converted to black & white.
  - 5. **Dithering**. When the Dithering option is selected, Photoshop mixes colors in the destination color space to simulate a missing color that existed in the source space. Although dithering helps to reduce the blocky or banded appearance of an image.
- 4. **Deskew**. If checked, it will straighten a skew scanned image.

True Color
Compression enabled Auto JPEG Quality: 75

5. Image Compression. Allows you to set the image compression options.

- True Color. Applies image compression options for true color images.
- Grayscale. Applies compression options for high color and grayscale images.
- Indexed. Applies compression options for indexed images.
- Monochrome. Applies compression options for monochrome images.
- 1. **Compression enabled**. If checked, it will compress image content depending on the image compression options selected.
  - 1. **Auto**. The best compression settings will be chosen on your behalf whilst retaining reasonable image quality.
  - 2. JPEG. Best used for colored images.
  - 3. Flate. Is used for text, graphics and images.
  - 4. JPEG/ZIP.
  - 5. JPEG 2000.
  - 6. JPEG 2000/ZIP.
- 2. **JPEG Quality**. A percentage value determining image content quality over compression the higher the value entered the lower the compression setting applied and image quality is retained to a higher degree lower values make smaller files.
- 6. Image Processing.

Images To PDF Options		8 ×
Categories	Image Post-Processing options	
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	Despeckle  Run OCR OCR Settings	
	<u>Ō</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

- 1. Deskew.
- 2. Despeckle.
- 3. Run OCR.

	×
✓ More La	nguages
ок	Cancel

The **Configure Presets...** option opens the **Preferences** dialog box which is also available in the **View** | **Preferences...** | **Scanner Presets** category.



### Send by E-mail

Send by E-mail... allows you to send a copy of the currently displayed PDF file to another user by e-mail.



When you select the first option, the **PDF-XChange Editor** attempts to open the local **MAPI** client with the currently displayed PDF file as its attachment.

### Revert

Revert cancels all the unsaved changes and reverts the document to its original state.

PDF-XChange Editor ×
Revert the <b>Page8Optimized_Optimized</b> document. Do you want to revert the document to original version?
✤ Yes
No

### Close

**Close** closes the currently displayed PDF file.

### Close All

Close All closes all opened PDF files.
## Export

Export allows you to export a selected page(s) or selected area of a page as an image file.

Selecting this option first takes you to the **Export Options** submenu:

Export to Images...

At the current time only export to Image file is available.

Clicking the Export to Image... option opens the Export to Image dialog box:

Pages Range: selected 253 of 253 pages	TIFF - Tag Imag		
All Selected Pages     Current Yiew     Pages:     Current Yiew     Pages:     Inage Type:     IFF - Tag Image File Format     Options Destination Folder:     C(\Users\lesya\Documents\     File Name:     %(FileName]_%(AutoNumber] Export Mode: Save each page to a separate single page image file     ✓ Open the Destination Folder with Result Files Graphic	1 650 px		
Page Zoom: 100% Page Background: Vert. Resolution: 150 dpi Vert. Resolution: 150 dpi	Image: 1 Page: 1 1 2 3 4	Zoom: Resolu 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 < → 4	100.0 tion: 150 dp

The entries on this dialog box are:

- 1. Pages Range. This selects the page(s) to be exported to image file(s). Valid options are:
  - 1. All. The entire document will be exported.
  - 2. Current Page. Only the currently selected page will be exported.
  - 3. Current View. Only pages appearing in the current view will be exported.
  - 4. Selected Pages. Only pages selected in the Thumbnail list will be exported.
  - 5. Selected Graphic. Only Graphic selected in the Thumbnail list will be printed.
  - 6. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 7. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Page Ranges to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
    - 1. All Pages. All of the specified pages are exported.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Page Range(s) only odd-numbered pages will be exported:

1, 3, 5, etc.

- 3. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Page Range(s) only even-numbered pages will be exported: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 8. Reverse Order. Checking this checkbox will reverse the order of pages in the export image file.
- 2. Save As. Selects the output image options to use for export. Valid options are:
  - 1. **Image Type**. It is a drop box that allows you to select which export image file format to use. After selecting an image type, you may click the **Options**... button to open a dialog box to tailor the output further. The options for each are different, but are relatively self-explanatory if you examine them. Valid export image file formats are:

BMP	Windows Bitmap
DCX	Multipage PCX
GIF	Compuserve GIF
JBIG2	Joint Bi-level Image experts Group v2
JNG	JPEG Network Graphic
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group
JPEG2000	JPEG 2000
PBM	Portable Bitmap
РСХ	PC Paintbrush File Format
PGM	Portable Graymap
PNG	Portable Network Graphic
PPM	Portable Pixelmap
TGA	Truevision Targa
TIFF	Tag Image File Format
WBMP	Wireless Bitmap format

 Options.... Clicking the Options... button opens an Image Saving Options dialog to change the default image format details for the selected Image Type. For example, for TIFF files, the dialog looks like:

Image type	24 (True-Co	lor)	*
Compression	LZW (Lempe	el-Ziv & Welch)	
Use Predictor	Yes		
X-DPI	96		
Y-DPI	96		Ε
Thumbnail	No		
Title			
Description			
Software			1
Creation Time			-
Author			
No. No. of Concession, Name			1000

3. Destination Folder. Selects the destination folder to receive the image files. Note that you may not

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	a) (O:) 🕨 Image		▼ 49 Sec	arch Image_Editor	
Organize 🔻 🛛 New folder				: ::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::	- (
📃 Recent Places 🔺	Name	^		Date modified	Туре
🔚 Libraries 📃		No items	match your se	earch.	
Documents					
J Music					
Pictures					
📑 Videos 🗮					
🖳 Computer					
🏭 Local Disk (C:)					
👝 Data (D:)					
👝 Development (E:)					
🚽 f\$ (\\olesya) (0:) 🔻	•	III			
Folder:					

simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the **Browse** button opens the **Browse for Folder**. Opens the dialog to select the destination folder:

4. **File Name**. Specifies the name of the export file. You may enter any valid file name you like. In addition, clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names.

This is especially useful for repeat jobs and to set the file numbering when single-page image files are being generated for multiple document pages:

Document Title	
Page Number	
Number Of Pages	
File Name	
Folder Name	
Computer Name	
User Name	
Environment Varia	ble
Auto Number	

- 1. Document Title. Inserts the PDF document title in the export file name.
- 2. **Page Number**. For single-page image files, such as BMP files, inserts the current PDF document page number in the export file name. For multi-page image files (such as TIFF files), inserts the first selected PDF document page number in the export file name.
- 3. **Number Of Pages**. Inserts the total page count of the PDF document file in the export file name. This is often used in a "PAGE of PAGES" expression.
- 4. File Name. Inserts the PDF document file name in the export file name.
- 5. Folder Name. Inserts the document folder name in the export file name.
- 6. **Date**. Inserts the current date in the export file name, in month-day-year order. If this is not appropriate, the next three items allow you to tailor your own date format.
- 7. Year. Inserts the four-digit year in the export file name.
- 8. Month. Inserts the two-digit month in the export file name.

- 9. Day. Inserts the two-digit day of the month in the export file name.
- 10. **Time**. Inserts the current time in the export file name, in hour-minute-second order. If this is not appropriate, the next three items allow you to tailor your own time format.
- 11. Hour. Inserts the two-digit hour in the export file name. Hour is from 0 (midnight) to 23 (11PM).
- 12. **Minute**. Inserts the two-digit minute in the export file name.
- 13. Seconds. Inserts the two-digit second in the export file name.
- 14. Computer Name. Inserts the computer name in the export file name.
- 15. User Name. Inserts the user name in the export file name.
- 16. Environment Variable. Inserts the environment variable in the export file name.

ALLUSERSPROFILE
APPDATA
CommonProgramFiles
COMPUTERNAME
HOMEDRIVE
HOMEPATH
LOCALAPPDATA
LOGONSERVER
OS
PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE
ProgramData
ProgramFiles
PUBLIC
SESSIONNAME
SystemDrive
SystemRoot
TEMP
тмр
USERDOMAIN
USERNAME
USERPROFILE

- 1. **Auto Number**. Inserts a counting number in the export file name. This is most useful when exporting multiple pages to single-page image files.
- 5. **Export Mode**. Determines how multiple PDF document pages are placed into multi-page export image files. Valid choices are:
  - 1. Save all pages to a single multi page image file. Self-explanatory.
  - 2. Save each page range to a separate multi page image file. When Page Range is set to Pages, each comma-separated range is placed in a different file.
  - 3. Save each page to a separate single paged image file. Each PDF document page is placed in a separate export image file.
- 6. Open the Destination Folder with Result Files. If checked, will open the folder with result files after saving.
- 3. Graphic. Defines the parameters for mapping the PDF document page to the export image file format.
  - 1. Page Zoom. Sets the zoom percentage of the PDF page that is exported to image file format.
  - 2. **Page Background**. Determines the color of the unmapped PDF page areas ("background") in the output image file. You may select the color from the dialog box by clicking the color button.
  - 3. **Resolution**. It is measured in dots-per-inch (DPI). The higher the resolution, the better the picture quality, but the larger the image file will be. Default is 300 DPI which seems to be a good compromise in most situations.

Once you have made the desired selections, click the **OK** button to export the image(s), or **Cancel** to cancel the operation.

When you select **OK** a progress screen of the export operation is displayed.

### Print

Print... allows you to print the contents of the currently selected PDF document to a selected printer.

Warning! Page Scaling functions are a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

Clicking this option opens the **Print** dialog:

2 Print	×
Printer	Paper: 'Letter' mm
Name: HP LaserJet 1020 i v Properties Status: Ready Type: HP LaserJet 1020 Copies: 1 Collate Duplex: Auto (None)	
Pages Range: selected 253 of 253 pages  All Current Page Current View	PDF-XChange Editor v3.x User Manual
Pages:     i (total 253 pages)     Subset: All Pages     Reverse Order  Pages Placement and Scaling	279,4 279,4 279,4 279,4 279,4 279,4 279,4 279,4 20 279,4 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20
Type: None Page Zoom: 100% Auto-Rotate Page on Paper Auto-Center Page on Paper Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size	Copyright 2015 2017 Technology 2014     Copyright 2015 2017 Technology 2014     Copyright 2015 2017 Technology 2014     Copyright 2015 2017 Technology 2014
✓ Ignore Printer Margins         Advanced Print Options         Print:       Document and Markups	Sheet: 1     Zoom: 100%       1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8     9     10     11     12     13     14     15     16     1     +     >     1
Print as Images More	Select Sheets: 1-253 (253 selected, 253 total) Reverse

- 1. **Printer**. Selects the Printer on which to print the PDF document.
  - 1. **Name** It is a drop box of all available printers to allow you to select which printer to print to. The system default printer is displayed when you first open the dialog box.
  - 2. Properties.... Click this button after selecting your printer to set the printer properties as desired.
  - 3. Page Setup.... Opens the Page Setup dialog to adjust some print options.
  - 4. Status and Type. Display additional printer information.
  - 5. Copies. Specifies the number of copies to print.

N.B. This only works for hardcopy printers. It is disabled for "printer drivers" such as PDF-XChange.

6. **Collate**. When checked, the printer will be instructed to collate multiple copies. The exact interpretation of this is up to the printer software.

N.B. This only works for hardcopy printers. It is disabled for "printer drivers" such as PDF-XChange.

7. Print to File. When this box is checked and the OK button is clicked, the following dialog appears:

The My Documents folder and the name of the document with the extension ".prn" is the default for the print file, but may be changed here. When you click Save, the document will be printed and saved to the indicated file. If you click Cancel, the print job is not done.

- 8. **Duplex**. Allows you to print on both sides of a paper automatically or manually if your printer supports such an option.
- 2. **Page Range**. This selects the page(s) to be printed. Valid options are:
  - 1. All. The entire document will be printed.
  - 2. Current Page. Only the currently selected page will be printed.
  - 3. Selected Pages. Only pages selected in the Thumbnail list will be printed.
  - 4. Selected Graphic. Only Graphic selected in the Thumbnail list will be printed.
  - 5. Current View. Only pages appearing in the current view will be printed.
  - 6. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 7. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Page Ranges to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
    - 1. All Pages. All of the specified pages will be printed.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Page Range(s) only odd-numbered pages will be printed: 1, 3, 5, etc.
    - 3. **Even Pages Only**. Within the specified Page Range(s) only even-numbered pages will be printed: 2, 4, 6, etc.
  - 8. Reverse order. Checking this checkbox will reverse the order of pages to be printed.
- 3. **Pages Placement and Scaling**. Controls the fitting of the PDF document pages to the selected printer's physical page dimensions.
  - 1. Type. Controls the PDF page to printer margins.
    - 1. **None**. The PDF will not be scaled but will appear on the page at 100%. This can result in loss of page data by cropping.

Туре:	None
Page Zoom:	100% \$
	Auto-Rotate Page on Paper
	Auto-Center Page on Paper
	Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size
	🗹 Ignore Printer Margins

- Auto-Rotate Page on Paper. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 2. Auto-Centre Page on Paper. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer page.
- 3. Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size. For a printer with multiple paper sources,

the one closest in size to the PDF document pages will be chosen.

- 4. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 2. Fit to Printer Margins. The page is fitted within the printer's margins, and may be expanded as necessary.

Тур	e: Fit to Printer Margins	Ŧ
Page Zoor	n: 100% \$	
	Auto-Rotate Page on Paper	
	Auto-Center Page on Paper	
	Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size	
	Ignore Printer Margins	

- 1. Auto-Rotate Page on Paper. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 2. Auto-Centre Page on Paper. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer page.
- 3. Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size. For a printer with multiple paper sources, the one closest in size to the PDF document pages will be chosen.
- 4. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 3. **Reduce to Printer Margins**. Oversized pages are reduced to fit the printer margins, but undersized pages will not be expanded.

Туре:	Reduce to Printer Margins
Page Zoom:	100% \$
	Auto-Rotate Page on Paper
	Auto-Center Page on Paper
	Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size
	Ignore Printer Margins

- 1. Page Zoom. Allows you to enter the zoom percentage of the PDF pages.
- Auto-Rotate Page on Paper. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 3. Auto-Centre Page on Paper. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer page.
- 4. Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size. For a printer with multiple paper sources, the one closest in size to the PDF document pages will be chosen.
- 5. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 4. Custom Zoom. Permits the user to print the PDF page after the page zoom is set.

- 1. Page Zoom. Allows you to enter the zoom percentage of the PDF pages.
- 2. Auto-Rotate Page on Paper. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 3. Auto-Centre Page on Paper. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer page.
- 4. Choose Paper Size by Document's Page Size. For a printer with multiple paper sources, the one closest in size to the PDF document pages will be chosen.
- 5. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 5. **Tile Large Pages**. Allows you to print a PDF page onto multiple sheets of paper if the page is larger than the page sizes available on your printer.

Туре:	Tile Large	Pages			
Page Zoom:	100%	\$	Overlap:	1,8 mm	\$
	Auto-f	Rotate Page i	n Composition		
	Auto-0	Center Page i	in Composition		
	Show	Cut-marks o	n Sheet		
	Show	Labels on Sh	eets		
	Ignore	Printer Maro	gins		

- 1. Page Zoom. Allows you to enter the zoom percentage of the PDF pages.
- 2. **Overlap**. Specifies the minimum amount of duplicated information you want printed on each tile for ease in assembly. The Overlap option uses the unit of measure specified for the document. The value should be greater than the minimum nonprinting margins for the printer.
- Auto-Rotate Page in Composition. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 4. Auto-Centre Page in Composition. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer pages.
- 5. Show Cut-marks on Sheet. Prints marks on each corner of a tiled page for ease of assembly. This option is used in conjunction with the Overlap option. When you specify an overlapping edge and then superimpose those edges, you can use the cut marks to line up the tiles.
- 6. **Show Labels on Sheets**. Prints the tile coordinate on every sheet. Tile coordinates are used for reassembling the tiles.
- 7. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 6. Tile All Pages. Allows you to print all PDF pages onto multiple sheets of paper.

Туре:	Tile All Pa	ges			
Page Zoom:	100%	\$	Overlap:	1,8 mm	\$
	Auto-R	lotate Page i	n Composition		
			in Composition		
	Show C	Cut-marks or	n Sheet		
	Show L	abels on She	eets		
	Ignore	Printer Marg	jins		

- 1. Page Zoom. Allows you to enter the zoom percentage of the PDF pages.
- 2. **Overlap**. Specifies the minimum amount of duplicated information you want printed on each tile for ease in assembly. The Overlap option uses the unit of measure specified for the document. The value should be greater than the minimum nonprinting margins for the printer.
- Auto-Rotate Page in Composition. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 4. Auto-Centre Page in Composition. Automatically centers undersize PDF page.
- 5. **Show Cut-marks on Sheet**. Prints marks on each corner of a tiled page for ease of assembly. This option is used in conjunction with the Overlap option.
- 6. Show Labels on Sheets. Prints the tile coordinate on every sheet. Tile coordinates are used for reassembling the tiles.
- 7. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 7. Multiple Pages per Sheet. Multiple pages can be printed on the same sheet of paper.

Pages Placement and	Scaling	
Туре:	Multiple Pages per Sheet	-
Pages per Sheet:	6 (2/3) - 2 by 3	
Pages Order:	Horizontal 👻	
	<ul> <li>Auto-Rotate Page in Cell</li> <li>Auto-Center Page in Cell</li> <li>Show Page Border</li> <li>Ignore Printer Margins</li> </ul>	

- 1. **Pages per Sheet**. Allows you to choose the number of pages that will appear on one printed page.
- 2. Pages Order. Defines the order of the PDF pages on the printer page.
  - 1. Horizontal. Places pages from left to right, top to bottom.
  - 2. Horizontal Reversed. Places pages from right to left, top to bottom.
  - 3. Vertical. Places pages top to bottom, left to right.
  - 4. Vertical Reversed. Places pages top to bottom, right to left.
- Auto-Rotate Page in Cell. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 4. Auto-Centre Page in Cell. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer page.
- 5. Show Page Border. Draws the page boundary of PDF pages.
- 6. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 8. Booklet. Allows you to create a booklet with pages arranged on sheets of paper so that they are

in the correct order when the paper is collated, folded, and stapled.

Туре:	Booklet			
Booklet Type:	Brochure	-	Sheets in Signature: 5	\$
Print Side(s):	Both	-	Gutter Size: 0 mm	\$
	Both Auto-Rot Auto-Cer Right Bin	ate Page nter Page	in Cell	

- 1. Booklet Type. Defines the type of the booklet to be printed.
  - 1. **Brochure**. Brochures are generally two or four pages in length and fit on a single sheet.
  - 2. **Book**. These have more that 2 or four pages, and are generally printed on both sides of large sheets, which are then folded and cut to produce a "signature". Many signatures may make up a single book.
- 2. Print Side(s). Determines which sides of the paper to print.
  - 1. Both. Both sides of the paper are automatically printed. N.B. Your printer must support automatic duplex printing.
  - 2. Front. Prints only those pages that appear on the front side of the paper.
  - 3. Back. Prints the pages on the back side of the paper.
- 3. Sheets in Signature.
- 4. **Gutter Size**. Sets the size of the blank space at which two pages come together in a twopage spread.
- Auto-Rotate Page in Cell. Pages whose aspect ratio differs significantly from the printer page may be rotated if these results in a better fit. Example: printing a "landscape" page to a "portrait" paper size.
- 6. Auto-Centre Page in Cell. Automatically centers undersize PDF pages on the printer page.
- 7. **Right Binding**. Sets the right-to-left orientation for the text.
  - 8. Ignore Printer Margins.
- 4. Advanced Print Options. Determines if extra elements will be printed as well as the basic text.
  - 1. **Print**. This drop box selects which PDF elements to print. Valid values are:
    - 1. **Document**. Prints only the PDF document without any markups.
    - 2. Document and Markups. Prints the PDF document with Markup annotations.
    - 3. Document and Stamps. Prints the PDF document with Stamp annotations.
    - 4. Form Fields Data Only. Prints the Form Fields Data.
    - 5. Markups Only. Prints the Markup annotations.
    - 6. Whole Content. Prints the Whole Content of the PDF document.
  - 2. Print as Images. Converts all pages to images when printing.
  - 3. More.... Opens the Advanced Print Option dialog box:

Advanced Print Options	X
Print Content Options	
Print Stamps ✓ Print Form-Fields	otations
Rendering Options	
Color Override: Auto Text Rendering Mode: Auto	Maximum Resolution for Images: 300 dpi Resolution for Gradient Fills: 150 dpi
Ignore Accessibility Co	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

- 1. **Print Content Options**. Sets the options of printing the content of a PDF document.
  - 1. **Print Page Content**. Prints the page content of a PDF document.
  - 2. Print Markups (annotations such as rectangle, circle, polygon, etc.). Prints the PDF document with Markups.
  - 3. Print Stamps. Prints the PDF document with Stamps.
  - 4. Print Form-Fields. Prints the PDF document with Form-Fields.
    - 1. Field Data Only (field with no border and background). Prints the Form Fields Data.
  - 5. **Print Media-Annotations (movie, sound, 3D, etc.)**. Prints the PDF document with Media-Annotations.
  - 6. Show Print-Marks Annotations. Shows Print-Marks Annotations.
  - 7. Print Notes. Prints the PDF document with Notes.
    - 1. Print Note Pop-Up(s). Prints the PDF document with Pop-Ups.
    - 2. Opacity. Sets the degree of opacity for Pop-Ups.
- 2. Rendering Options. Allows you to adjust the color and resolution settings.
  - 1. Color Override.
  - 2. Text Rendering Mode.
  - 3. **Maximum Resolution for Images**. Sets the maximum page resolution in pixels per inch (DPI) for Print as Images. Default is 300 DPI which seems to be a good compromise in most situations. Valid values are: 50, 72, 96, 100, 150, 300, 400, and 600 DPI.
  - 4. **Resolution for Gradient Fills**. Sets the page resolution in pixels per inch (DPI) for Gradient Fills. Valid values are: 50, 72, 96, 100, 150, 300, 400, and 600 DPI.

- Ignore Accessibility Color Overrides.
   Ignore Page Crop-Clip.
- 3. Print to File. Saves the print settings in order to print the document later using the different printer or computer.

### **Document Properties**

**Document Properties...** opens a dialog to display additional information about the PDF document.

Note that Description and Fonts are display ONLY - you cannot modify these fields in any way.

There are the following tabs on this dialog:

1. Description. This tab displays the descriptive information for the document. The fields are self-explanatory.

File Size: 15.96 MB (16.735.847 bytes)	
Security     Location: C:\Users\lesya\Desktop\Po6ora\       Initial View     File Size: 15,96 MB (16 735 847 bytes)       Advanced     Document Info       JavaScript     Document Iitle: PDF-XChange Editor v3       Author:	
Advanced Document Info JavaScript Document Itile: PDF-XChange Editor v3 Author: Subject:	
PDF Producer: PDF-XChange Editor v3	]
Application: <unknown></unknown>	
PDF Version: 1.4 Additional	Metadata
Created:         27.02.2014, 19:46:48         Pages Count:         253           Modified:         19.02.2014, 1:26:12         Page Size:         215,9 x	279,4 mm
PDF-XChange: Viewer v2.5.211.0 (Jun 17 2013 09:18:22) 19.02.2014, 2:0	9:01

- 1. Note that Document Title, Author, Subject and Keywords may be changed as needed.
- 2. The **Additional Metadata**... button activates a dialog that shows customized Metadata fields that have been added to the standard data.

#### From PDF Reference 1.7: 10.2.1 Document Information Dictionary

The optional Info entry in the trailer of a PDF file (*see Section 3.4.4, "File Trailer"*) can hold a document information dictionary containing **metadata** for the document; Table 10.2 shows its contents. Any entry whose value is not known should be omitted from the dictionary rather than included with an empty string as its value.

Please refer to PDF Reference 1.7, available as a free download from http://www.adobe.com/.

2. **Fonts**. Displays the font information for the PDF document. This can be quite useful in resolving PDF display issues across platforms, especially in the case of missing fonts.

Categories	Fonts used in this Document	
Description	Arial	-
Fonts Security Initial View	Type: TrueType Encoding: WinAnsiEncoding Actual Font: Arial Actual Font: Type: Object Number: 2149	=
Advanced	▲ Arial,Bold	
JavaScript	Type: TrueType Encoding: WinAnsiEncoding Actual Font: Arial Bold Actual Font Type: Object Number: 2156	
	▲ ArialMT (Embedded Subset)	
	Type: True Type (CID) Encoding: Identity-H Object Number: 356	
	Consolas-Bold (Embedded Subset)	
	Type: True Type (CID) Encoding: Identity-H Object Number: 2 379	
	▲ Courier New	
	Type: TrueType Encoding: WinAnsiEncoding	-
		Found 16 Font

3. Security. Allows you to enable or disable the PDF document security.

Categories	Document Security Settings	
Description	Document Security	
Fonts	The document's Security Method determines what (if any) changes are allow security restrictions, set the Security Method to No Security.	ved. To remove
Security	Security Method: No Security	nge Settings
Advanced	Encryption Method: None Apply Se	ecurity Policy 👻
JavaScript	Document Permissions Details	
	Printing: High Resolution Changing the Document Allowed Document Assembly: Allowed Content Copying: Allowed Content Copying for Accessibility: Allowed Page Extraction: Allowed Commenting: Allowed Form Fields Filling: Allowed Signing: Allowed	
	ОК	Cancel

4. Initial View. Determines the settings of the page's initial view. The settings can be modified according to the user's preferences.

Categories	Document's Initial View
Description	Layout and Magnification
Fonts	Navigation View: Page only
Security	Page Layout: Continuous
Initial View	Magnification: Default
Advanced	Open to <u>P</u> age: 1 (total <b>253</b> pages)
JavaScript	Window Options
	Show in <u>T</u> itle: File Name
	Open in <u>F</u> ull Screen Mode <u>R</u> esize window to initial page Center <u>w</u> indow on screen
	User Interface Options
	Hide M <u>e</u> nu bar Hide W <u>i</u> ndow Controls

1. Layout and Magnification. Determines the appearance of the document.

- 1. Navigation View. Specifies which panels and pages are displayed in the navigation pane.
  - 1. **Automatic**. Uses the page display information from the PDF to determine how the PDF is displayed.
  - 2. Page only. Displays only the page. No panels are displayed.
  - 3. Bookmarks panel and page. Displays Bookmarks and PDF pages.
  - 4. Thumbnails panel and page. Displays Thumbnails and PDF pages.
  - 5. Layers panel and page. Displays Layers and PDF pages.
  - 6. Attachments panel and page. Displays Attachments and PDF pages.
- 2. Page Layout. Specifies how document pages are arranged.
  - 1. **Automatic**. Uses the page display information from the PDF to determine how the PDF is displayed.
  - 2. **Single Page**. Displays only a single page at a time. It is not possible to scroll the pages to see part of one and part of another.
  - 3. Continuous. May display parts of two or more pages simultaneously.
  - 4. Facing. Pages are displayed side by side in pairs, but only two pages may be scrolled.
  - 5. **Continuous Facing**. Pages are displayed side by side and more than two pages may be scrolled.
- 3. Magnification. Sets the zoom level the document will appear at when opened.
- 4. **Open to Page**. Determines the page that appears when the document opens.
- 2. **Window Options**. Specifies how the window adjusts in the screen area when a user opens the document. These options apply to the document window itself in relationship to the screen area of the **user's** monitor.
  - 1. **Show in Title**. Displays the File Name or the Document Title in the title bar of the window. The document title is obtained from the Description panel of the Document Properties dialog box.
  - 2. **Open in Full Screen mode**. Maximizes the document window and displays the document without the menu bar, toolbar, or window controls.

- 3. User Interface Options. Allows you to hide some parts of the interface. If the menu bar and toolbars are hidden, users can apply commands and select tools only with the help of the keyboard shortcuts.
  - 1. Hide Menu bar. Menu bar will be hidden.
  - 2. Hide Toolbars. Toolbars will be hidden.
  - 3. Hide Window Controls. Window controls will be hidden.

#### 5. Advanced.

Document Properties	8 <b>×</b>
Categories	Advanced Document Settings
Description	PDF Settings
Fonts Security Initial View Advanced	Base URL: Irapped: Unknown   Print Dialog Presets  Page Scaling: Default  Duplex Mode: Default
	Paper Size by Document Page Size      Print Page Range:     (total 253 pages)      Number of Copies: Default      Reading Options
	Binding: Left To Right   Language: <unknown></unknown>
	Actions Actions Type: Before Document Close
	<u>O</u> K <u>Cancel</u>

#### 1. PDF Settings.

- Base URL. Specifies a base URL for web links in the pdf document. This makes it easy for you to manage web links to other websites. If the URL to the other site changes, you can simply edit the base URL and not have to edit each individual web link that refers to that site. The base URL is not used if a link contains a complete URL address.
- 2. **Trapped**. Trapping is a complex process that depends on the interaction of various color, ink, and printing factors; the correct settings vary, depending on specific press conditions. Do not change the default trap settings unless you've consulted with your print service provider.
- 2. **Print Dialog Presets**. When these basic print options are preset, it will not be necessary to set them in the Print dialog box each time while printing any document.
  - 1. **Page Scalling**. Allows you to preset the Default or None Page Scalling option in the Print dialog box.
  - 2. **Duplex Mode**. This allows you to preset the options of printing on both sides of a paper if your printer supports such an option. There are four positions for you to choose:
    - 1. Default.
    - 2. None. Prints on one side of a paper.
    - 3. Long Edge. Prints on both sides of the paper, which flips along the long edge.
    - 4. Short Edge. Prints on both sides of the paper, which flips along the short edge.
  - Paper Size by Document Page Size. Selects the option by the same name in the Print dialog box. Uses the PDF page size to determine the output tray rather than the page setup option. This option is useful for printing PDFs that contain multiple page sizes on printers that have differentsized output trays.
  - 4. **Print Page Range**. Presets the Pages box in the Print Range section of the Print dialog box with the page ranges you enter here. This setting is useful in a workflow where documents include both

instruction pages and legal pages. For example, if pages 1-2 represent instructions for filling out a form, and pages 3-5 represent the form, you can set up your print job to print multiple copies of only the form.

- Number of Copies. Presets the Copies box in the Print dialog box. Choose a number from 2-5, or choose Default to use the application default, which is one copy. This limitation prevents multiple unwanted copies from being printed.
- 3. Reading Options. Determines how the PDF is read by a screen reader or other device.
  - 1. **Binding**. Specifies whether to display a PDF with left-side or right-side binding.
  - 2. Language. Setting the document language in a PDF enables some screen readers to switch to the appropriate language.
- 4. Actions. Sets the options for executing actions.
  - 1. Actions Type. Determines when the specified actions are executed. The available choices are: Before Document Close, Before Document Saving, After Document Saving, Before Document Printing, After Document Printing.
  - 2. Edit.... Opens the Edit Actions List for adjusting the actions.

Document Properties					8 ×
Categories		D.	ocument JavaScrip	ot	
Description	<u>A</u> dd	<u>E</u> dit	Delete		
Fonts					
Security					
Initial View					
Advanced					
JavaScript					
				<u>о</u> к	<u>C</u> ancel

#### 6. JavaScript.

# Copy Full File Name

Copies the fully-qualified file name of the active PDF to the Clipboard.

For example, the copied path name for the demo file used in this documentation is:

F:\Samples\_Editor\PDFVManual.pdf

## Open Containing Folder...

**Open Containing Folder** allows you to open the folder containing the active PDF document in Windows Explorer. When the folder opens, it does so with the active document selected:



### Exit

Exits the **PDF-XChange Editor** program.

If you select this option with open PDF files that have been modified, you will be prompted whether or not to save the changes.

### Edit

The Edit menu items are concerned with modifying PDF information.



#### Undo

Undo reverses the last editing change made to the document. It can be used for editing text within text boxes.

#### Redo

**Redo** reverses the undo or advances the buffer to a more current state. It can be used for editing text within text boxes.

#### Cut

**Cut** stores a copy of the selected PDF area in the clipboard, and removes it from the document. It can be used for editing text within text boxes.

#### Сору

**Copy** stores a copy of an area of the active PDF page selected by the **Select Tool** into the clipboard. It can be used for editing text within text boxes. The **Copy** command is only active when something has been selected on a displayed PDF page.

#### Paste

**Paste** inserts the information from the clipboard at the selected location. It can be used for editing text within text boxes.

This function is partially realized in that you can mark and then copy PDF text using Ctrl+C, and then use Ctrl+V to

paste it into the text area of any of the Comment and Markup Tools, or into another application altogether.

#### Delete

**Delete** removes the selected PDF area from the document. It can be used for editing text within text boxes.

### Find

Find allows you to locate specific text within the currently selected PDF document.

When you select this entry, it activates the Find toolbar. If the toolbar is already active, it flashes it twice.

# Enter Text to Find Drop-down List of Previous Search Terms Find Options Find Previous Find Next Find... = < > \*

The controls on this toolbar are:

- 1. Enter Text to Find. Enter the text you wish to find.
- 2. Drop-down List of Previous Search Terms. Clicking this button drops a list of previous search terms.
- 3. Find Options. Sets the Find options.



- 1. Case Sensitive. Searches the words distinguishing between upper-case and lower-case letters.
- 2. Whole Words. Searches the whole words.
- 3. Ignore Diacritics. Ignores diacritics while searching.
- 4. Include Page Text. Searches the text through pages content.
- 5. Include Bookmarks. Searches the text of any bookmarks, as viewed in the Bookmarks panel.
- 6. **Include Comments**. Searches the text of any comments added to the PDF, as viewed in the Comments panel.
- 7. Include form fields. Includes form fields of the current document in the search.

- 8. Include External links. Include hyperlinks to external files and sites in search.
- 9. Colored Find-Results. Show colored find-results in the active document.
- 4. Find Previous. Clicking this finds the selected text just before the current cursor position.

Find	 F <	>	*

5. Find Next. Clicking this finds the selected text just after the current cursor position.

Find	-	Ŧ	<	>	×
C		_	_		

Note: It should be noted that PDF files created from solely Image based content (e.g. scanned to PDF) cannot be text searched - there is no actual text within the PDF file - simply an image, even though the image may represent text. Such feature requires using OCR (optical character recognition) functionality.

### Search

Search opens a dialog box to allow searching for text in PDF documents that are text-based.

It differs from **Find** in that it will search either the active PDF document, or multiple PDF's in selected Folders. After the search, you may click on a selection in the list to jump to that page.

When **Search** is opened the following window is displayed in a sidebar to the right of the main display area:

/HAT would you li	ike to search?
Enter word or	phrase 👻
Advanced Crite	<u>ria</u>
HERE would you	like to search?
n active documen	t ("PDFVManua 👻
Search	Options
State: idle	

The controls on this screen are:

1. WHAT would you like to search? Enter the text you wish to search for in this field. Note that "Search" supports the following logical operators:

AND. It can be used between two words to find both terms, in any order. Whitespace is used to specify logical AND, as it is the default operator for joining search terms.NOT. It is used before a search term to exclude any documents that contain that term.OR. It is used to search for all instances of either term.

If you want these logical operators to be searched for, quote them: "and", "not", "or". 2. Advanced Criteria.

- 1. Custom.
- 2. Find text with.

- 3. Search.... Click this button to start searching.
- 4. **Options...** Sets various **Search** options.

	Case Sensitive
	Whole Words
	Ignore Diacritics
Y	Include Page Text
Y	Include Bookmarks
Y	Include Comments
Y	Include Form-Fields
Y	Include External Links
Y	Include Attachments
Y	Include Document Info
V	Pre-Estimate the Search in Folder
Ý	Look in Sub-Folders
	Proximity +
Y	Colored Search-Results
	Clear Results

- 1. Case Sensitive. Searches the words distinguishing between upper-case and lower-case letters.
- 2. Whole Words. Searches the whole words.
- 3. Ignore Diacritics. Ignores diacritics while searching.
- 4. Include Pages Text. Searches the text through pages content.
- 5. Include Bookmarks. Searches the text through the bookmarks from Bookmarks panel.
- 6. **Include Comments**. Searches the text through the comments added to the PDF from the Comments panel.
- 7. Include form fields. Include form fields in search.
- 8. Include External Links. Search including hyperlinks to external files and sites.
- 9. Include Document Info. Searches the text through the information about the document.
- 10. Include Signatures. Searches the text of any signatures, as viewed in the Signatures panel.
- 11. Include Attachments. Searches the text of any attachments, as viewed in the Attachments panel.
- 12. Pre-Estimate the Search. Count number in the given folders to provide correct search progress
- 13. Look in Sub-Folders. Includes searching in sub-folders.
- 14. Proximity.
  - 1. Only Adjacent Words.
  - 2. Words from the same Paragraph.
  - 3. Words from the same Page.
  - 4. Words from the same Document.
- 15. Colored Search Results. Show colored search results in document.
- 16. Clear Results. Clears the selected search criteria.

#### WHERE would you like to search? Opens a drop-list of search locations:

In active document ("PDFVManual.pdf")
In all opened documents (1)
😤 Browse for folder

- 1. The first item on this list is the currently selected PDF file.
- 2. In all opened document. Choosing this option will allow you to search through the text in all opened

documents.

3. **<Browse for folder...>**. Opens a screen to select a folder not found in the standard list:

Organize 🔻 New folde	r		•
<ul> <li>Documents</li> <li>Music</li> <li>Pictures</li> <li>Videos</li> </ul>	Name	Date modified	Type
	Diff	12/24/2012 10:53	File folde
	Image_Editor	12/24/2012 1:19 PM	File folde
	Images_Lite	4/10/2012 5:35 PM	File folde
	Images_Standard	4/10/2012 10:03 AM	File folde
Image: Computer           Image: Second Disk (C:)           Image: Development (D:)           Image: Development (E:)           Image: Development (D:)           Image: Development (D:)	Ms	12/24/2012 10:53	File fold
	Work_copy_12_03_2012	3/12/2012 11:55 AM	File fold
🗣 Network 🚽	< III : f\$ (\\olesya) (O:)		,

## Properties

The **Properties** pane becomes active when an object on pdf page is selected. The options in the properties pane are dynamic and differ depending on what is selected. For example while typing in somewhere like a typewriter annotation or text box, the properties pane looks like this:

Character	
Fill Color	0,0,0
Font	Courier New
Font Size	12 pt
Bold	False
Italic	False
Underline	False
Strikethrough	False
Script Style	No
▲ Paragraph	
Text Alignment	Left

While not typing somewhere, the properties pane is dependant on the active tool, or object:



Rectan	gle Tool Properties	x	Stam	p Tool Properties
▲ General			▲ General	
Keep Selected	True		Keep Selected	True
Exclusive Mode	False		Exclusive Mode	False
▲ Subject			Subject	
Subject Kind	Default		Subject Kind	Default
Subject	Rectangle		Subject	Stamp
▲ Style			▲ Style	
Fill Color	0,0,0		Stroke Color	255,0,0
Stroke Color	255,255,0		Opacity	100%
Border	Solid			
Width	🔲 10 pt			
Opacity	100%			
Blend Mode	Normal			

Distan	ce Tool Properties	×	
▲ General			
Keep Selected	True		
Exclusive Mode			
▲ Subject			
Subject Kind	Default		
	Dimension Line		
▲ Style			
	* None		
Stroke Color	255.0.0		
	Solid		
	— 1 pt		
	100%	1:10	
	Normal		ation Tool Properties
Line Endings		4 General	2000
	Closed Arrow	Keep Selected	True
	Closed Arrow	▲ Style	
Start Scale		Stroke Color	<u> </u>
End Scale			Solid
4 Leader	Adto	Width	
Leader Length	53 mm	Highlight Mode	abe Invert
Leader Extension			
Leader Offset			
Caption	vmm		
Show Caption	Ver		
Inline Caption			
	1mm 1m		
Scale	I mm		
Sticky N	ote Tool Properties	× Sound	d Tool Properties
▲ General		▲ General	
Keep Selected	True	Keep Selected	True
Exclusive Mode	False	Exclusive Mode	False
▲ Subject		▲ Subject	
Subject Kind	Default	Subject Kind	Default
Subject	Sticky Note	Subject	Sound
▲ Style		▲ Style	
Fill Color	255,255,0	Fill Color	64,85,255
lcon	Comment	lcon	Sound
Opacity	100%	Opacity	100%
Opacity	**** IUU76	Opacity	**** IUU%

Clicking Properties opens the Properties Pane which displays the currently set properties for the selected object.

To change any of them you have to click it. In the end of a box with property's name there appears an arrow. After you click the arrow, you will see available options for changing each of the properties. Some items only provide information about an object but cannot be edited.

## Export settings...

**Export settings...** exports the application's settings to the data file. There are a few options to choose from when exporting settings:

Prog	gram Options		
orgi ✓ Digi ✓ Plug	r Stamps Collections tal Signature Appearance I-Ins Additional Data Spell Checker	Templates	=

- 1. Program Options. Exports user's preferences, settings, and customizations.
- 2. History. Exports user's document history.
- 3. User Stamps collections. Exports user's custom stamps collections.
- 4. **Digital Signature Appearance Templates.** Exports user's custom digital signatures and their respective appearance templates.
- 5. Plug-ins Additional data. Gives the ability to export data from various plug-ins.
  - 1. Spell checker. Exports the user's custom dictionary entries.

# Import settings...

Import All Settings from Data File... imports the previously saved application's settings from the data file.



# Reset Settings

Reset Settings... allows you to change the current application's settings into default ones.

Clicking the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Reset}}$   $\ensuremath{\textbf{Settings}}$  ... option opens the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Reset}}$   $\ensuremath{\textbf{Settings}}$   $\ensuremath{\textbf{Options}}$  dialog box:

Program Op	otions	
Com	mon	
Prese The p	ts predefined or custor	m sets of options
🗹 User	p <b>ts list</b> choices for some w ipt dialogs	arning, confirmation and
🗹 UI La	nguage	
Mistory		
User Stamp	s Collections	
Digital Sign	ature Appearance T	emplates
## Preferences

Preferences allow you to set default values for the PDF-XChange Editor functionality.

There are 21 tabs on the **Preferences...** dialog:

- 1. **Documents** options allow you to modify document opening, document creating, layout and saving preferences.
- 2. Page Display options allow you to condition how a PDF is initially displayed. The display may be modified by the user as necessary.
- 3. Page Text controls the text options.
- 4. Full Screen controls the visual display of PDF pages when in Full Screen mode.
- 5. **Performance** Options affect how well the program utilizes memory and other system resources to produce the best display.
- 6. Color Management Allows you to adjust color settings for PDF printing and display.
- 7. Languages Allow you to localize your copy of the editor to the language you are most comfortable with.
- 8. Prompts allow you to restore the confirmation prompt box of the operation.
- 9. File Associations Determines whether PDF-XChange Viewer will be used as the default viewer for PDF files or whether another previously-installed application should be used.
- 10. Registration Allows you to register your copy of the PDF-XChange Editor.
- 11. Accessibility Controls color options for displaying PDF pages for people with poor or limited eyesight.
- 12. Measurement Determines the linear units to use for all displays.
- 13. Identity Allows you to store frequently-used information about yourself that can be added to PDF's that you are annotating. N.B. Such information is <u>never</u> exported without your knowledge and approval.
- 14. Security -
- 15. JavaScript Controls the behavior of JavaScript execution within the PDF-XChange Editor.
- 16. Snapshot Tool Controls the behavior of the Snapshot Tool.
- 17. Forms Allow you to control the options of form fields.
- 18. Commenting Allows you to select two ways to copy circled text into Comments.
- 19. Signatures -
- 20. Scanner Presets Control the options for scanning.
- 21. Plug-ins Controls the behavior of the Plug-ins.
- 22. Send Mail Allows you to adjust the options for sending an e-mail.
- 23. Search Providers -
- 24. Speech Controls the behavior of the Sound Tool.

### Documents

**Documents** options allow you to modify document opening, creating, layout and saving preferences.

Categories	Documents Options
Documents	Tabs and Windows
🔊 Page Display Page Text 🛃 Full Screen	Configure program for using tabs and windows while opening new or related documents and adjust program's behavior when you close or minimize the main window.
Performance	Open Documents
Color Management PLanguages Prompts	Restore Last Session when application starts i
File Associations Registration	Always use Incremental Save      Choose destination folder for 'Save As' of documents:
Accessibility	Last Used Folder 👻 🖻 Browse
Measurement Identity Security JavaScript	New Documents       PDF-Specification:       Auto
Snapshot Tool	-

1. **Tabs and Windows**. Determines how PDF documents will be displayed by the PDF-XChange Editor. The **Setup...** button will open the Manage Tabs and Windows dialog box:

2	Manag	ge Tabs and Wir	ndows	
R	Single document mode			
	Open each new documen	t in <u>n</u> ew window		
	Hide tab bar when only si	ngle document is op	pened	
	Synchronize layout of doc	ument panes across	s all opened docum	ents 📋
	Open n <u>e</u> w document:	in new tab	-	
	Open <u>r</u> elated document:	in new tab	-	
	Minimize to System Tray			
	Close to System Tray			

- 1. **Single document mode**. Each window of the program may display only a single document. Multiple windows must be opened to display multiple documents.
- 2. **Open each new document in new window**. Each document is displayed in a new window of one program instance.
- 3. Hide tab bar when only single document is opened. Hides the tab bar when a single document is opened.
- 4. Synchronous layout of document panes across all opened documents. Enable this to synchronize changes of the document panes layout across all opened documents (i.e. reordering, splitting, toggling panes, etc.)
- 5. Open new document.
  - 1. New Tab Opens the new document in sequence with the rest of the tabs currently in use.
  - 2. In new adjacent tab Opens the new document adjacent to the currently active document's tab.
- 6. Open related document.
  - 1. New Tab Opens the new document in sequence with the rest of the tabs currently in use.
  - 2. In new adjacent tab Opens the new document adjacent to the currently active document's tab.
- 7. Minimize to System Tray. When checked, the application will be minimized to system tray.
- 8. Close to System Tray. When checked, the application will be closed to system tray.
- 2. Open Documents. Determines how the PDF-XChange Editor responds to Open commands.
  - 1. **Restore Last Session when application starts**. When checked, the last work session will open automatically.
  - 2. Manage History & Recents.... Opens the Manage History and Recents dialog.

Manag	ge Histo	ry and Recen	its	
History Options				
Max. number of items:	5000	<b>i</b> \$		
Item's life-time:	10000	<b>i</b> \$	days	
	Clear I	history on <u>E</u> xit		
			History	contains 72 items
Recents List Options				
Show max. number of items:	50	\$		
Show thumbnail		Show file	-path	
Show caption		Cache the	umbnails	
Clear		<u>O</u> K		Cancel

- 1. History Options.
  - 1. **Max. number of items**. You can set the maximum number of documents to be displayed in the Recent documents list.
  - 2. Item's life-time.
  - 3. Clear history on Exit. Clears the history list completely on exit.
- 2. Recents List Options.
  - 1. Show max. number of items. The maximum number of items will be displayed in the Recents list.
  - 2. Show thumbnail. Displays the thumbnails of the documents listed in the Recents.
  - 3. Show caption.
  - 4. Show file-path. Displays the file path of the documents listed in the Recents.
  - 5. Cache thumbnails.
- 3. Save Documents. Determines how the PDF-XChange Editor responds to Save commands.
  - 1. Always use Incremental Save. Incremental mode allows a file to be saved with both the original and modified data. The file size will be larger but all information will be saved in both its original and modified forms.

Users should not have to wait for the entire file - which can contain hundreds of pages or more - to be rewritten each time modifications to the document are saved. The PDF format allows modifications to be appended to a file, leaving the original data intact. The addendum appended when a file is incrementally updated contains only those objects that were actually added or modified, and includes an update to the cross-reference table. Incremental update allows an application to save modifications to a PDF document in an amount of time proportional to the size of the modification rath file.

In addition, because the original contents of the document are still present in the file, it is possible to undo saved changes by deleting one or more addenda. The ability to recover the exact contents of an original document is critical when digital signatures have been applied and subsequently need to be verified.

- Choose destination folder for 'Save As' of documents. Selects the destination folder to receive 'Save As' Documents. Clicking the Browse... button opens the Browse for Folder dialog to select the destination folder:
- 4. New Documents. Controls the creation of new documents.
  - 1. **PDF-Specification**. Allows you to choose the version of PDF-specification for new documents creation.

# Page Display

Page Display options allow you to condition how a PDF is initially displayed.

Page Text   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Page Display   Registration   Display art, trim, bleed boxes   Display transparency grid   Verge Display   Measurement   Security   Forbid the change of the current Zoom factor during execution of 'Go to Destinat actions (these actions can be launched from bookmarks, hyperlinks, java scripts).		Preferences
Page Display   Page Text   Performance   Color Management   Restore last used view of document: custom layout and visibility of document panes such as bookmarks, thumbnails etc.   Default View:   Automatic   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   Languages   Display art, trim, bleed boxes   Display art, trim, bleed boxes   Display large images   Use Resolution: Automatic: 96 reprice prices	Categories	👸 Page Display Options
JavaScript	Documents     Page Display     Page Text     Full Screen     Performance     Color Management     Languages     Prompts     File Associations     Registration     Accessibility     Measurement     Identity	Initial Display
Snapshot Tool	Snapshot Tool	R <u>e</u> ndering

- 1. Initial Display. Determines the settings of the page's initial display.
  - 1. Restore the last used view of document: custom layout and visibility of document's panes such as bookmarks, thumbnails etc.
  - 2. **Default View**. Determines which parts of the PDF display are visible for the newly-opened document. The view may be changed by the user. Valid values are:
    - 1. Automatic. Uses the page display information from the PDF to determine how the PDF is displayed.
    - 2. Page only. Display only the page. No panels are displayed.
    - 3. Bookmarks panel and page. Displays Bookmarks and PDF pages.
    - 4. Thumbnails panel and page. Displays Thumbnails and PDF pages.
  - Restore last used page layout and zoom settings while opening a document from the Recent List. When checked, AND you are opening a file listed on the Recent Files list, use the page display settings last used for that document.

- Default Page Layout. Determines how the pages are arranged and whether to use continuous scrolling or discrete paging. The view may be changed by the user. Valid values are:
  - 1. Automatic. Uses the page display information from the PDF to determine how the PDF is displayed.
  - 2. Single Page. Only displays a single page at a time. It is not possible to scroll the pages to see part of one and part of another.
  - 3. Continuous. May display parts of two or more pages simultaneously.
  - 4. Continuous Facing. Pages are displayed side by side and more than two pages may be scrolled.
  - 5. Continuous Cover Page.
  - 6. Facing. Pages are displayed side by side in pairs, but only two pages may be scrolled.
  - 7. Cover Page.
- 5. **Default Page Zoom**. Determines how the pages are initially fitted to the display window. The view may be changed by the user.

Valid values are:

- 1. Automatic. Uses the page display information from the PDF to determine how the PDF is displayed.
- 2. 6400%.
- 3. 3200%.
- 4. 2400%.
- 5. 1600%.
- 6. 800%.
- 7. 400%.
- 8. 200%.
- 9. 100%. Page is displayed as Actual Size.
- 10. 50%. Page is displayed half-size.
- 11. 25%. Page is displayed quarter-size.
- 12. 12.5%. Page is displayed one-eighth size.
- 13. 8.3%. Page is displayed one-twelfth size.
- 14. Actual Size. Page is displayed actual size.
- 15. Fit Width. Page is fitted into display area so page width is displayed. This usually results in some of the page not being visible without scrolling.
- 16. Fit Page. Page is fitted into display area so entire page is displayed.
- 17. Fit Visible. Page is displayed without margins.
- 2. Page Display. Determines how the PDF is initially displayed.
  - 1. **Display art, trim, bleed boxes**. When checked, any art, trim, or bleed boxes defined for a document are displayed.
  - 2. Display large images. When checked, the large images are displayed.
  - 3. Display transparency grid. When checked, the grid behind transparent objects is displayed.
  - 4. Use logical page numbers.
  - 5. **Use Resolution**. Page resolution in pixels per inch (DPI). Valid values are:
    - 1. Automatic: 96. Standard display monitors are 96 DPI.
    - 2. 72.
    - 3. 96.
    - 4. 100.
    - 5. 120.
    - 6. 132.
    - 7. 150.
    - 8. 163.
    - 9. 264.
    - 10. 300.
  - 6. Forbid the change of the current Zoom factor during **execution of 'Go to Destination' actions** (these actions can be launched from bookmarks, hyperlinks, java scripts).
  - 7. **Rendering**. Controls the smoothing and contrast settings.

	Rendering	g	
Smoothing			
Smooth <u>T</u> ext: ClearType (for Laptop/LCD screens)		✔ Smooth line <u>a</u> rt ✔ Smooth <u>i</u> mages	
Advanced			
✓ Enhance thin lines Synchronous page rendering:			
No	-		
Default transparency <u>b</u> lending color sp	ace:		
Auto	1992393333		

- 1. **Smoothing**. Results in a "softer" look but some fine detail may be lost.
  - 1. **Smooth Text**. Applies smoothing to the text.
  - 2. Smooth line art. Applies smoothing to remove abrupt angles in lines.
  - 3. **Smooth images**. Applies smoothing to minimize abrupt changes in images.
- 2. Advanced.
  - 1. Enhance thin lines.
  - 2. Synchronous page rendering.
  - 3. Default transparency blending color space.

# Page Text

Page Text controls the text options.

2	Preferences
Categories	Page Text Options
Documents       Age Display         Page Text         Page Tex	✓ Create links from URLs in page text (i.e. "http://www.server.com")         ✓ Handle IP-addresses (i.e. "173.194.33.46")         ✓ Skip IP-addresses without protocol prefix         Copy Text Options
	<u>Q</u> K A <u>p</u> ply <u>C</u> anc

- 1. **Detect Interactive Text Links**. Creates annotation links on the basis of the text analysis. If the text contains a link to a web page but the object Link is not created, then it is possible to make the program read the text and allow opening those links.
  - 1. **Create links from URLs in page text (i.e. "http://www.server.com")**. When checked, URLs on the PDF pages become "active" and may be clicked to bring up additional content.
  - 2. Handle IP-addresses (i.e. "173.194.33.46"). If this option is checked the addresses, which contain IP-address instead of domen name (e.g. http://192.168.150.18/wakeonlan/) will be processed.
  - 3. Skip IP-addresses without protocol prefix. If this option is checked it will skip addresses which do not start from the protocol name (http://, https://, ftp:// and so on).
- 2. Copy Text Options. Determines what is to be put between the words while copying the text. If the words are distributed into some distance, you may define what to put between those words.
  - 1. Copy white spaces mode. Controls the white spaces copying.
    - 1. Distance words proportionally. White spaces are proportionally distributed between the words.
    - 2. Only one white space between words. Only one white space between each word is left.
    - 3. Preserve original white spaces only. White spaces are copied without changes.
  - 2. Preserve original ligatures. Ligatures will be copied without any changes.

# Full Screen

**Full Screen** controls the visual display of PDF pages when in Full Screen mode. Full Screen mode is often used for presentations where a speaker may have the PDF pages displayed by a projector.

When not in full screen mode, you can adjust the preferences by going to Edit-->Preferences--> Fullscreen At all times, you can access the preferences by using the keyboard shortcut Ctrl+K

2	Preferences
Categories	Full Screen Options
Documents	General
Page Display	When document requests the full screen mode:
Full Screen	Which monitor to use: Current
Performance	Stay awake
Color Management	Pages Navigation
Languages Prompts	<ul> <li>Exit by pressing 'Esc' key</li> <li>Presentation mode i</li> <li>Loop after last page</li> <li>Automatically go to next page after: 5</li> </ul>
File Associations	Appearance
Accessibility Measurement	Background color: Use solid background Mouse cursor: Hide after delay
Security	Page Transition
JavaScript	Always use default transition
Snapshot Tool	Default transition: Replace   Direction:
	<u>O</u> K Apply <u>C</u> ancel

#### 1. General.

- 1. When document requests the full screen mode. The option to allow, Deny, or Ask User Before are provided. These come into effect when a document has a script that automatically wants to open in full screen.
- 2. Which monitor to use. In instances where more than one monitor is being used with a given computer, you may choose to always have full screen on any particular screen. Current, Tallest, Widest, biggest and primary are automatically pulled from the system's current information
- 3. Stay awake. When this option is ticked, the screensaver will not activate and the computer will not go to sleep/hibernate.

#### 2. Pages Navigation.

- 1. Exit by pressing 'Esc' key. Specifies if pressing Esc key leaves full screen mode to return to regular desktop mode.
- 2. Presentation Mode.

-Left Mouse click goes to Next Page, Right mouse click goes to Previous page -Press "B" or "W" to make the whole screen black or white respectively -Press "P" to pause the automatic turning of pages and press it again to resume. -Commenting and form filling ar not accessible

3. Show pages navigation bar. This helps to navigate the document from buttons on the bottom corner:



- 4. Loop after last page. When navigating through the pages of the document, the editor will revert to the first page when this option is selected and the last pages is passed.
- 5. Automatically go to next page after. This is for passive presentation. The Editor automatically goes to the next page after the time specified.

#### 3. Appearance.

- 1. **Background Color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog to allow you to customize the background color for the display. The default is black background.
- 2. Use solid background. If not selected, the regular background type is used.
- Mouse Cursor. Determines the behavior of the mouse cursor after display. There are three options:
   1. Hide after delay. The cursor "disappears" after a short delay. It reappears if the mouse is moved.
  - 2. Always visible. The cursor remains visible at all times.
  - 3. Always hidden. The mouse disappears immediately after display.

#### 4. Page Transition.

- 1. Always use default transition.
- 2. Default Transition.
- 3. Direction.

See also: http://www.tracker-software.com/knowledgebase/455-Using-fullscreen-in-the-Editor-55309

### Performance

**Performance** options affect how well the program utilizes memory and other system resources to produce the best display.

#### N.B. Unless you know what you are doing, we suggest leaving all options set to Automatic.

2	Preferences
Categories	Performance Options
Documents       Image: Page Display         Page Display       Page Text         Page Text       Page Text         Page Text       Performance         Color Management       Image         Color Management       Image         Prompts       File Associations         Registration       Image: Performance         Measurement       Image: Performance         Identity       Security         Identity       Identity         Iscurity       Image: Page: Performance         Image: Performance       Image: Performance	Memory            • Use system memory in percentage points: <ul> <li>Automatic</li> <li>Use system memory in megabytes:</li></ul>
	OK Apply Cano

- 1. **Memory**. This determines the amount of system memory used by the Editor, in percent of Physical memory. The minimum used will be 40Mb, the amount specified by Automatic. Allocating more than this may improve Editor performance, but possibly at the expense of overall system performance.
  - 1. Use system memory in percentage points.
  - 2. Use system memory in megabytes.
- 2. **Threads Usage**. The values are Automatic, 1, 2, 4, 8. We strongly recommend leaving these set to Automatic.
- 3. Turn off all textured backgrounds to improve UI performance on terminal session.

# Color Management

**Color Management** allows you to adjust color settings for PDF printing and display. We recommend that only users with experience in Windows color management make adjustments to these properties.

2		Preferences
Categories		Color Management Options
Documents	1	Color Settings: Default
Page Display		Working Spaces
Page Text		RGB: Monitor RGB - sRGB IEC61966-2.1
Full Screen		CMYK: U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2
Performance		<u>G</u> rayscale: Gray Gamma 2.2
Color Management	=	
Languages		Conversion Options
? Prompts	COURSE OF THE	Engine: Little CMS
File Associations		✓ Use Black Point Compensation
S Registration		
Accessibility		
Measurement		
Identity		
Security		
JavaScript		
io Snapshot Tool		
	-	
		<u>OK</u> Apply <u>Canc</u>

- 1. Color Settings. Drop box determines whether Color Management is to be used or not. The valid options are:
  - 1. Default.
  - 2. Save Current Settings.
  - 3. Delete.
  - 4. Manage...
  - 5. Off. No color management will be used.
  - 6. Custom. The remaining color settings will be used to condition the display of PDF images.
- 2. Working Spaces. Determine which specific settings apply to images saved with different color options.
  - 1. **RGB**. Conditions display of images using RGB settings. Valid options are:
    - sRGB IEC61966-2.1. Default setting. sRGB is a RGB color space proposed by HP and Microsoft because it approximates the color gamut of the most common computer display devices. Since sRGB serves as a "best guess" for how another person's monitor produces color, it has become

the standard color space for displaying images on the internet. sRGB's color gamut encompasses just 35% of the visible colors specified by CIE. Although sRGB results in one of the narrowest gamuts of any working space, sRGB's gamut is still considered broad enough for most color applications.

- 2. Adobe RGB (1998).
- 3. Generic Monitor Adobe1998RGB D65 WP 2.2 Gamma.
- 4. Generic Monitor AppleRGB D65 WP 1.8 Gamma.
- 5. Apple RGB.
- 6. CIE RGB.
- 7. ColorMatch RGB.
- 8. DiamondTron Monitor G22 D93.
- 9. Hitachi Monitor G22 D93.
- 10. RICOH RUSSIAN-SC 040402.
- 11. KODAK DC Series Digital Camera.
- 12. NEC Multisync Monitor G22 D93.
- 13. NTSC (1953).
- 14. PAL/SECAM.
- 15. ProPhoto RGB.
- 16. SMPTE-C.
- 17. sRGB IEC61966-2.1.
- 18. Trinitron Monitor G22 D93.
- 19. Wide Gamut RGB.
- 2. CMYK. Conditions display of images using CMYK settings. Valid options are:
  - 1. U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2. Specifies adaptation to standard coated printing papers.
  - 2. Coated FOGRA27 (ISO 12647-2:2004).
  - 3. Coated FOGRA39 (ISO 12647-2:2004).
  - 4. Euroscale Coated v2.
  - 5. Euroscale Uncoated v2.
  - 6. Japan Color 2001 Coated.
  - 7. Japan Color 2001 Uncoated.
  - 8. Japan Color 2002 Newspaper.
  - 9. Japan Web Coated (Ad).
  - 10. Photoshop 4 Default CMYK.
  - 11. Photoshop 5 Default CMYK.
  - 12. Uncoated FOGRA29 (ISO 12647-2:2004).
  - 13. U.S. Sheetfed Coated v2.
  - 14. U.S. Sheetfed Uncoated v2.
  - 15. U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2.
  - 16. U.S. Web Uncoated v2.
  - 17. Web Coated FOGRA28 (ISO 12647-2:2004).
- 3. Grayscale. Conditions display of grayscale images. The only valid option is:
  - 1. Gray Gamma 2.2.
- 3. Conversion Options. Allows you to adjust the color space conversion in a document.
  - 1. Engine. Determines which engine will be used for color space conversion. The only valid value is:
    - 1. Little CMS. LittleCMS is a CMM, a color management engine; it implements fast transforms between ICC profiles.
  - 2. Use Black Point Compensation.

### Languages

**Languages** allow you to localize your copy of the Editor to the language set you are most comfortable with. This adjusts all controls and labels to use the selected language.

You can download more language packs here: http://www.tracker-software.com/editor\_lang

-	Select preferred interface language	
8	Standard Name	Local Name
	Use Regional Settings English (US), Built-In	Use Regional Settings English (US), Built-In
	Chinese (PRC) Chinese (Taiwan)	中文(简体) 中文(繁體)
=	Czech Danish	čeština Dansk
	Dutch (Standard)	Nederlands
	Finnish French (Standard) French (Switzerland) Frisian German (Standard) Hebrew Hungarian Italian Japanese Korean	suomi français Français Suisse Frysk Deutsch עברית Magyar italiano 日本語 한국어
	Set as <u>D</u> efault	More lang
		English (US), Built-In Chinese (PRC) Chinese (Taiwan) Czech Danish Dutch (Standard) Finnish French (Standard) French (Switzerland) Frisian German (Standard) Hebrew Hungarian Italian Japanese Korean

Options are:

- 1. Select preferred interface language. Allows the user to select which alternate language to use from a list. Note that there are more languages available than indicated here. Once you have chosen your prefered language, you must press Set as <u>Default</u> to apply the change.
- 2. Use Regional Settings. Sets to user's regional settings.
- 3. English (US), Built-In. This selects the application language which is English.
- 4. Set As Default. Sets the specified settings as default.

Please contact Tracker Software Products Ltd for more information.

## Prompts

Prompts allow you to restore the confirmation prompt box of the operation.

2	Preferences
Categories	Prompts and Confirmations
Documents   Page Display   Page Text   Full Screen   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool	Restore default dialogs state
	OK Apply <u>C</u> ancel

While performing some operations in PDF-XChange Editor, the program shows you a dialog box with a checkbox which allows you to save your choice for future, like in the following example:

PDF-XChange Editor		×
Do you want to reset		main panes to default?
	<u>Y</u> es	No

If you select the checkbox and click on **Yes** button, PDF-XChange Editor will remember your choice and will not show the warning message next time you try to perform the same operation.

To restore the warning message and confirmation prompt you have to click the **Restore default dialog state** button.



## File Associations

**File Associations** determines whether PDF-XChange Editor will be used as the default viewer for PDF files or whether another previously-installed application should be used.

✓ Security         ✓ JavaScript         ✓ Notify when PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application			Preferences	1
Documents   Page Display   Page Text   Full Screen   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Pregistration   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool		ciations Setup	🚺 File Assoc	Categories
Page Text   Full Screen   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool			File Associations	Documents
Page Text   Yersion: 5.5.0312.0001 C:\Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Editor\PDFXEdit.exe Color Management Color Management Languages Prompts File Associations Registration Accessibility Measurement Const Change Identity Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool Version: 5.5.0312.0001 C:\Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Editor\PDFXEdit.exe Version: 5.5.0312.0001 C:\Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Editor\PDFXEdit.exe Measurement Security Measurement Sonapshot Tool Notify when PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application			Current PDF application:	Rage Display
Full Screen C:\Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Editor\PDFXEdit.exe   Performance As Default application for PDF files: Do not change   Color Management View PDF files in Internet Explorer: Do not change   Prompts Register NP-plugin for other browsers: Do not change   Registration Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change   Accessibility Ihumbnail Handler for PDF files: Do not change   Measurement Apply changes only for current user   Security View PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application				Page Text
Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool		re\PDF Editor\PDFXEdit.exe		Full Screen
Color Management   Color Management As Default application for PDF files: Do not change View PDF files in Internet Explore: Do not change Registration Registration Accessibility Accessibility Measurement Identity Security Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool Accessibility PDF files Do not change View PDF files in Internet Explore: Do not change View PDF files in Internet Explore: Do not change Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change Do not change Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change Measurement View PDF composition Measurement Measureme				
<ul> <li>Prompts</li> <li>File Associations</li> <li>Register NP-plugin for other browsers: Do not change</li> <li>Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change</li> <li>Measurement</li> <li>Identity</li> <li>Security</li> <li>JavaScript</li> <li>Snapshot Tool</li> </ul>	-	Do not change 👻 👻	As <u>D</u> efault application for PDF files:	Color Management
Prompts          Prompts       Register NP-plugin for other browsers: Do not change         Registration       Preview Handler for PDF files: Do not change         Accessibility       Ihumbnail Handler for PDF files: Do not change         Measurement       Identity         Security       Apply changes only for current user         JavaScript       Votify when PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application		Do not change 🚽	View PDF files in Internet Explorer:	Languages
File Associations         Preview Handler for PDF files:         Do not change         Accessibility         Accessibility         Measurement         Identity         Security         JavaScript         Snapshot Tool				Prompts
Accessibility       Image: Internation of the image: Ima	_ <b>i</b>	Do not change 👻	Register NP-plugin for other browsers:	File Associations
Measurement         Identity         Security         JavaScript         Snapshot Tool	-	Do not change 👻	Preview Handler for PDF files:	Segistration
Identity       Apply changes only for current user         Security       Image: Constraint of the security         JavaScript       Image: Constraint of the security         Snapshot Tool       Image: Constraint of the security	-	Do not change 👻	<u>I</u> humbnail Handler for PDF files:	Accessibility
Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool				Measurement
✓ Security         ✓ JavaScript         ✓ Notify when PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application         ✓ Notify when PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application			Apply changes only for current <u>u</u> ser	S Identity
Snapshot Tool	<u>A</u> pply	Apply.		Security
Snapshot Tool				JavaScript
		ult PDF Application	✓ Notity when PDF-XChange Editor is not defa	i Snapshot Tool
				<b>▼</b>
	Cance	Apply	ОК	

- 1. File Associations.
  - 1. Current PDF application. Shows the current default PDF application.
  - 2. As Default application for PDF files.
    - 1. **Do not change -** Does nothing. Note that after changes are applied, these options all revert back to "Don not change".
    - 2. Make default Makes PDF-XChange Editor the default PDF viewer.
    - 3. **Restore -** Restores previous default for viewing PDF.
  - 3. **Register NP-plugin for other browsers**. Uses PDF-XChange Editor as the PDF viewer control inside Google Chrome and FireFox. N.B. A Plug-in for Opera is in development.
  - 4. **Preview Handler for PDF files**. Sets PDF-XChange Editor as the preview handler for PDF while browsing your file system.
  - 5. Thumbnail Handler for PDF files. Allows each document's thumbnail to be seen on the desktop.
  - 6. **Apply changes only for current user**. Excludes other users on the same machine (i.e. Guest account)

7. Notify when PDF-XChange Editor is not default PDF Application. If this option is selected, the PDF-XChange Editor will always verify that it is set as the default PDF application. If it is not the default, you will see this dialogue when launching the Editor:

	PDF-XChange Editor ×
?	PDF-XChange Editor is not currently set as your default PDF application. Would you like to make it your default?
	୬ Yes
	» <u>N</u> o
	Always perform this check when starting
	ou can also set the Editor as default PDF application through: dit > Preferences > File Associations

## Registration

#### Registration allows you to register your copy of the PDF-XChange Editor.

The valid serial key is provided to the registering party when they purchase a license. When set to **Trial**, the program runs in the FREE Evaluation Mode. Please see **IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version** for additional information.

When you install the serial key, your Editor's PRO features will be activated.

2	Preferences
Categories	less Registration Info
Documents   Page Display   Page Text   Page Text   Page Text   Pull Screen   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security	Installed serial/license keys:         You have no license keys installed
JavaScript	Remove Add new Serial Key
Snapshot Tool	Hide all licensed features from toolbars and menus
	QK Apply Cancel

To install the serial key, copy your personal key into the Clipboard and then click the **Add new serial key...**button. You will see this dialogue:

	Add New Serial/License Key	
	Please specify the new serial/activation license key in below:	text box
PXP50	-LMMZaoQmhXJRZ6GCW4Y0IE1PbsPtwkPoESp0ixjyptF+	-
		=
upLYC	TTFdr1yRZFqjdSzOrpQ3+64PnUeILducd/HWzviN+mXZO	
Ĩ	Paste Key from Clipboard	
	Continue 🛛 🖓 Ca	ncel

The key should automatically populate, if not; make sure the key is copied to your clipboard, then click on Paste Key from Clipboard, then click "Continue".

You may wish to choose the automated licensing method using your Personal.xcvault file. Make sure that all PDF-XChange programs are not running, then open your vault file. You can download your vault file from within your account. More information here.

If you are served an activation code (rather than a serial key) by one of our trusted resellers, you will see this dialog when placing your activation code into the **Add new serial key** field.

	Activate	
Pleas	e specify your name and valid e-mail address.	
<b>(</b> )	Please be sure that the e-mail address provided by you is robus our activation server will provide all future upgrades and licens email address! Once activation is successfully completed your automatically update your system with the required license key	e keys to this application will
	Your <u>N</u> ame: Tracker Software Products	
	Your E-mail: @@tracker-software.com	*
	Activation Key:	*
	O Activate	Cancel

You will be notified of the procedure's success with the following message:

2	PDF-XChange Editor	×
i	Result of adding new licens 1 license key has been successfully	
		<u>C</u> lose

You can verify whether you are in Evaluation mode, or licensed mode by going to Edit -> Preferences -> Registration,

and making sure you see the key state as Valid. More information regarding Evaluation VS. Licensed mode here.

**Hide all protected features in all toolbar and menus**. When checked in **Evaluation** mode, items labeled **PRO** in the menus and tollbar will not be displayed, thus preventing accidentally modifying the PDF in a way that would cause the watermarks to appear in the PDF when saved.

# Accessibility

Accessibility controls color options for displaying PDF pages for people with poor or limited eyesight.

2	Preferences
Categories	Accessibility Options
Documents       Image: Color Management         Page Text       Performance         Performance       Color Management         Color Management       Image: Color Management         Performance       Prompts         Prompts       Registration         Performance       Identity         Measurement       Identity         Identity       Security         JavaScript       Snapshot Tool         Performance       Terme	✓ Override Document Colors         ✓ Document Color Scheme Options         ✓ Page Background Color:         ✓ Text Color:         ✓ Line Art:           Fill Color:           Stroke Color:           Color of black text or line art only
	OK Apply Cancel

- 1. **Override Document Colors**. When checked, PDF document colors will be overridden and the other controls on the screen become active.
- 2. Color Scheme. Use Predefined High-Contrast Color Scheme:
  - 1. Windows. Use the color scheme from Windows accessibility options.
  - 2. Green on Black. Green text on Black background.
  - 3. Yellow on Black. Yellow text on Black background.
  - 4. White on Black. White text on Black background.
  - 5. Black on White. Black text on White background.
  - 6. Save Current Settings. Saves all current settings.
  - 7. Delete. Deletes the selected color scheme.
  - 8. Manage.... Opens the Manage Presets dialog, which allows you to delete, edit or clone any of the available color schemes.

3.	Presets:	
2.03	Windows Color scheme based on Windows Appearances settings	ŕ
	Green on Black Green text on black page background	
	Yellow on Black Vellow text on black page background	=
	White on Black White text and linearts on black page background	
	Black on White	
	Delete Edit A T	

- 3. Document Color Scheme Options. Allows you to adjust the document color scheme.
  - 1. **Page Background**. This opens the standard Color Selection dialog to assist you in selecting a page background color.
  - 2. **Text Color**. When checked, this allows you to open the standard Color Selection dialog to assist you in selecting a text color.
  - 3. Line Art. When checked, this activates the following two controls:
    - 1. **Fill Color**. This opens the standard Color Selection dialog to assist you in selecting a Line Art Fill color.
    - 2. **Stroke Color**. This opens the standard Color Selection dialog to assist you in selecting a Line Art Stroke color.
- 4. Change the color of black text or line art only. When checked, color changes will only occur for text and line art that appear as black on white. Other color combinations will not change.

## Measurement

Measurement determines the linear units to use for all displays.

2 Preferences		
Categories	Measurement Options	
Documents   Page Display   Page Text   Page Text   Page Text   Page Text   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool	Units and Rulers	
	<u>Q</u> K Apply <u>C</u> ancel	

- 1. Units and Rulers. Valid unit values are:
  - Point. 1/72 inch.
  - Inch.
  - Centimeter.
  - Millimeter.
  - Pica equal 1/72 of a foot and so to 1/6 inch. There are 12 points in the pica.
  - 1. Show Rulers. Shows or hides rulers.
  - 2. Show Fractions. Shows or hides fractions.
- 2. Grid and Guides. Grids provide a visual reference for aligning objects vertically and\or horizontally to specific page positions according to Ruler increments.
  - 1. Distance between grid lines. Allows you to specify the distance between grid lines.
  - 2. Grid lines origin offset. Changes the grid offset.
  - 3. Subdivisions for Grid. Specifies the number of lines that appear within a given distance.

- 4. Show Guides. Shows or hides guides.
- 5. Guides Style. Allows you to specify the guide lines' style.
- 6. Grid Lines Style. Allows you to specify the grid lines' style.
- 7. Use Snapping (to Grid, Guides, Objects). When this option is checked, snapping will be used.

C	ustomize Snapping	
Show Snap location	on <u>m</u> arks	
Grid		
Snap to <u>G</u> rid		
Snap only to Grids	Intersections	
Threshold:		
Guides		
Snap to Guides		
T <u>h</u> reshold: Lo		
Objects		
Snap to Objects		
Snap to Annotation	ns Only	
Thr <u>e</u> shold: Lo	w vu	
Snap to:		
Tend Point		Select <u>A</u> ll
🗹 💠 Edge		Deselect All
Mid Point		
Center		
✓ ♦ Intersection		
	ок	Cancel

- 1. Show Snap location marks. Shows or hides snap location marks.
- 2. Grid.
  - 1. Snap to Grid. Aligns an object with the nearest grid line when you move the object.
  - 2. Snap only to Grids Intersections.
  - 3. **Threshold**. Allows you to choose the level of sensibility. Valid values are: Low, Medium, High.
- 3. Guides.
  - 1. Snap to Guides. Aligns an object with the guide lines when you move the object.
  - 2. **Threshold**. Allows you to choose the level of sensibility. Valid values are: Low, Medium, High.
- 4. Objects.
  - 1. Snap to Objects. Aligns shapes with other objects.
  - 2. Snap to Annotations Only. Allows snapping to annotations only.
  - 3. **Threshold**. Allows you to choose the level of sensibility. Valid values are: Low, Medium, High.
  - 4. Snap to:
    - 1. End Point. Allows snapping to end point of the object.

- Edge. Allows snapping to the edge of the object.
   Mid Point. Allows snapping to middle point of the object.
- 4. Center. Allows snapping to the center of the object.
- 5. Intersection.
- 5. Select All. Selects all.
- 6. Deselect All. Deselects all.

# Identity

**Identity** allows you to store frequently-used information about yourself that can be added to PDF's that you are annotating.

#### N.B. Such information is <u>never</u> exported without your knowledge and approval.

Preferences				
Categories	2	Identity Op	otions	
Documents   Page Display   Page Text   Full Screen   Performance   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Measurement   Neasurement   Identity   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool	Identity Login Name: Name: Itle: Organization Name: Organization Unit: E-mail Address: Your identity information may be us Information entered here is used on application without your knowledge	Patrick	nts, reviews and digital	
		<u>о</u> к	Apply	Cancel

Login Name: Is automatically populated with the login name for that PC. Name: Optional field Title: Optional field Organization Name: Optional field

Organization Unit: Optional field E-Mail Address: Optional field

# Security



File Open and Program Launch options - Allows the user to manipulate permissions of certain launch and open actions.

- 1. When document trying to open a file:
- 2. When Document trying to open an attachment:
- 3. When Document trying to open a site

### JavaScript

JavaScript controls the behavior of JavaScript execution within the PDF-XChange Editor.

#### N.B. Use of JavaScript capabilities is a programmer-level task! You have been warned.

JavaScripts may be embedded in PDF documents and activated by either **AcroForm** controls or by events generated by manipulating the document in various ways.

2	Preferences
Categories	JavaScript Options
Documents Page Display Page Text Page Text Performance Color Management Color Management Languages Prompts File Associations Registration Accessibility Measurement Color Management Color Managemen	<ul> <li>JavaScript</li> <li>✓ Enable JavaScript Actions</li> <li>✓ Show warning when JavaScript action executes</li> <li>JavaScript Console</li> <li>✓ Enable JavaScript Interactive Console</li> <li>Show Console on Errors and Messages</li> <li>Console Eont: Consolas</li> <li>✓ Font Size: 10 pt </li> </ul>
	<u>O</u> K Apply <u>C</u> ancel

- 1. JavaScript. Enables or disables JavaScript actions.
  - 1. **Enable JavaScript Actions**. Checking this checkbox allows JavaScript to execute within the specified PDF document. If unchecked, the next checkbox becomes active.
  - 2. Show warning when JavaScript action executes. When Enable JavaScript Actions is not checked, checking this box will pop up a warning screen when a JavaScript attempts to execute.
- JavaScript Console. Enables or disables the JavaScript console. The JavaScript console is a part of the JavaScript environment that allows you to view an embedded JavaScript and also allows you to execute JavaScript commands.
  - 1. Enable JavaScript Interactive Console. Checking this checkbox enables the JavaScript console

integral to the **PDF-XChange Editor**.

- 2. Show Console on Errors and Messages. When checked, the JavaScript console will be activated if the JavaScript being executed either encounters an error or if it displays a message.
  - 1. **Console Font**. Specifies the Font to use when displaying the **JavaScript** console.
  - 2. Font Size. Specifies the size of the Font to use when displaying the JavaScript console.

To open the JavaScript Console use shortcut keys [Ctrl]+[J] or go to View menu | Show JavaScript Console.

# Snapshot Tool

This screen controls the behavior of the **Snapshot Tool**.

2	Preferences
Categories	Snapshot Tool Options
Documents   Page Display   Page Text   Full Screen   Performance   Color Management   Color Management   Languages   Prompts   File Associations   Registration   Accessibility   Measurement   Identity   Security   JavaScript   Snapshot Tool	Image Copy Options         Used specified resolution for snapshot images:         Resolution:       150         Force snapshot images to grayscale         Automatically copy image to clipboard after move or resize:         Select All type:       Select nearest whole page         Notifications         ✓       Play a sound         ✓       Flash the selected region
	<u>Q</u> K Apply <u>C</u> ancel

- 1. Image Copy Options. These control the images produced by the Snapshot Tool.
  - 1. Used specified resolution for snapshot images. When checked, all snapshot images will be produced at the resolution specified by the Resolution drop box. Valid values are: 72, 96, 100, 150, 300, 400, 600, 1200, and 2400 DPI.
  - 2. Force snapshot images to grayscale. Checking this checkbox converts the image from colored to grayscale.
  - This can reduce the image size quite a lot especially at higher resolutions.
  - 3. Automatically copy image to clipboard after move or resize.
    - 1. Select All type.
      - 1. Select visible portion of nearest page. Copies a part of the nearest page.
      - 2. Select nearest whole page. Copies the whole nearest page.

#### 2. Notifications.

1. Play a sound. When checked, the sounds are made when the snapshot control is clicked to produce the

snapshot.

- 2. Flash the selected region. When checked, the selected region when the snapshot control is clicked to produce the snapshot.
- 3. Automatically name bookmarks from selected text.

## Forms

Forms allow you to control the options of form fields.

	Preferences	
Categories	Forms Options	
Accessionity Measurement Measurement Identity Security JavaScript Signatures Forms Commenting Signatures Scanner Presets Scanner Presets Plug-ins Send Mail Search Providers Launch Applications Customize UI Update	<ul> <li>General</li> <li>✓ Automatically calculate form field values</li> <li>✓ Show focus rectangle</li> <li>✓ Show text overflow indicator</li> <li>Highlight Form Fields</li> <li>Highlight Required Fields Only</li> <li>✓ Show Hover Border for Field</li> <li>Fill Color:</li> <li>✓ Hover Color:</li> <li>✓ Border Color:</li> <li>✓ Border Color:</li> <li>✓ Combo Boxes</li> <li>✓ Push Buttons</li> <li>✓ Text Box</li> <li>✓ Check Boxes</li> <li>✓ Signatures</li> </ul>	<b>Kes</b>
	ОК Арріу	Can

- 1. General. Allows you to set the general options for the form fields.
  - 1. Automatically calculate form field values. Automatically performs all field calculations upon user entry.
  - 2. Show focus rectangle. Indicates the form field which currently has the focus.
  - 3. Show text overflow indicator.
- 2. Highlight Form Fields. Allows you to set the highlight options for the form fields.
  - 1. Highlight Form Fields When Document Opened.
  - 2. **Highlight Required Fields Only**. Allows you to select a border color of form fields. The border appears for required form fields only after you attempt to submit the form.
    - 1. **Fill Color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog to assist you in selecting the color of highlighted form fields.
    - 2. **Border Color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog to assist you in selecting the border color of highlighted form fields.

3. Show Hover Border for Fields.

#### 1. Hover Color.

- 4. Highlight All Form Fields. Allows you to apply highlight options to all kinds of form fields.
- 5. Highlight Only Fields of Selected Types.
  - 1. **Combo Boxes**. Allow you either choose an item from a pop-up menu or type in a value.
  - 2. Check Boxes. Present yes-or-no choices for individual items. If the form contains multiple check boxes, the user can typically select as many or few of these as wanted.
  - 3. List Boxes. Allow you to choose a displayed list of options.
  - 4. Push Buttons. Initiates a change on the user's computer, such as opening a file or others.
  - 5. Radio Buttons. Present a group of choices from which the user can select only one item.
  - 6. Signatures. Allow you electronically sign a PDF document with a digital signature.
  - 7. Text Boxes. Allow you to type in text.
  - 8. Barcodes.

# Commenting

**Commenting** allows you to select two ways to copy text into Comments.

Categories	Commenting Options
Co	
Identity Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool Forms Commenting Signatures Scanner Presets Plug-ins Send Mail	Imments Viewing Options         Show Tooltips         Show Text Indicators         Display Subject Label in comment pop-ups         Display Author Label in comment pop-ups and tooltips         Display Modification Date in comment pop-ups         Display Iocalized names of units in measurement information         Open comment pop-up by mouse double click         Imments Creation Options         Copy encircled text into Drawing comment pop-ups         Copy selected text into Highlight, Cross-Out, and Underline comment pop-ups         Switch to pencil tool with digitizer         Paste comments into mouse position

- 1. Comments Viewing Options.
  - 1. Show Tooltips.
  - 2. Show Text Indicators.
  - 3. Display Subject Label in comment pop-ups. The subject label will be displayed in comment pop-ups.
  - 4. **Display Author Label in comment pop-ups and tooltips**. The author label will be displayed in comment pop-ups and tooltips.
  - 5. **Display Modification Date in comment pop-ups**. The modification date will be displayed in comment pop-ups.
  - 6. Display localized names of units in measurement information.
- 2. Comments Creation Options.
  - 1. Copy encircled text into Drawing comment pop-ups. For drawing-type comments, encircled text will be copied into the pop-up comment, where it can be edited or further commented on.
  - 2. Copy selected text into Highlight, Cross-Out, and Underline comment pop-ups. When using the
Select Tool, selected text will be copied into the pop-up comment, where it can be edited or further commented on.

3. Paste comments into mouse position. Copied comments will be pasted into mouse position.

# Signatures

Signatures - Allows you to modify your preferences for digital signatures.

1		Preferences	
Categories		👷 Digital Signatures Options	
Measurement Identity	<b>^</b>	Creation & Appearance • Control options for signature creation • Set the appearance of signatures within a document	More
Security		Verification	
Snapshot Tool		Control how and when signatures are verified	More
Commenting			
<ul> <li>Signatures</li> <li>Scanner Presets</li> <li>Plug-ins</li> <li>Send Mail</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Search Providers</li> <li>Launch Applications</li> </ul>	=		
Rustomize UI O Update Speech	Ŧ		
		<u>O</u> K Apply	Car

Creation and appearance

Creation				
Defa	ult Signing <u>M</u> ethod:	Default DigiSig Har	ndler	-
Defa	ault Signing <u>F</u> ormat:	PKCS#7 - Detached		-
	re's <u>r</u> evocation statu: e before applying sig			
• Manage digital sig	gnatures appearance	5	More	

Verification

opened to succeed wher	never possible during
o succeed when	never possible during
<u>0</u> K	Cancel
	<u>о</u> к

### Scanner Presets

Scanner Presets control the default options for scanning.

		Preferences	,			
Categories		[	Configure Scan	ner Presets		
Accessionity			Scanner Settings:	<custom></custom>		
Measurement		Parameters				0.00000000
Identity		Cranner	Brother DCP-7065DN			
Security		Scanner.	Manufacturer: Brother	" Type: WIA		
JavaScript		Data Transfer Method:		, ijpe in i -	Sho	w Native U
Snapshot Tool			Calas			w Native t
Forms		Color Mode:		*		
Commenting		Resolution:	150 dpi	<b>*</b>		
👷 Signatures		Paper Size:	Automatic			<u>S</u> etup
Scanner Presets		Source:	Feeder	-	]	
Plug-ins		Sides:	Simple Scan	-	)	
Send Mail	=	Scan More Pages:	Disabled	▼ 5 \$	seconds	
Search Providers			Show Scan Propert	ties Before Scar	ı	
Launch Applications			Show Images Inser	rtion Dialog		
Customize UI			Images Insertion	Options		
🕠 Update						
Speech						
<b>A</b> <sup>N</sup> -1-22						
			ОК	Apply		Car

- 1. Parameters. Sets the parameters for scanning.
  - 1. Scanner. Selects the scanner on which to scan the document.
  - Data Transfer Method. Native Mode transfers in the default mode for your scanner. Memory Mode is automatically selected for scanning in resolutions over 600 dots per inch (dpi).
  - 3. Show Native UI.
  - 4. Color Mode. Allows you to choose the color mode.
  - Resolution. Sets the desired 'DPI' (Dots per inch) for the file pages. This can be any value from 50 to 2400 DPI - though this is also MS Windows OS dependant; some earlier Versions of Windows do not support DPI settings of such high values.
  - 6. Paper Size. Allows you to choose an appropriate paper size.
  - 7. Setup....
  - 8. Sides. Sets the scanning side. The options are:
    - 1. Both Sides. Scans both sides of pages.
    - 2. Front Sides. Scans only front sides of pages.

- 9. Scan More Pages. Lets you select one of the following options:
  - 1. **Disabled**. Disables the scanning of more pages.
  - 2. Ask user. When scanning is finished, you will be asked if you want to scan more pages.
  - 3. Automatically after. When the scanning session is finished, the next one will start automatically.
- 10. Show Presets Dialog.
- 11. Show Images Insertion Dialog.
- 12. Images Insertion Options.... Defines additional image insertion options for the new document.
  - 1. New Page Options. Allows you to set the page options.

L	1	Images	To PDF Optic	ons			
	Categories		Ne	w Page	e Option	s	
	New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing		ze by Image Size A4 (210 x 297 m 210 mm Portrait		297 mm	:	0 mm 0 mm
						<u>0</u> K	

- 1. Choose Paper Size by Source. This option specifies the size of the page by the source.
- 2. **Standard**. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
- 3. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the page.
- 4. **Orientation**. Sets the orientation of the page.
  - 1. Portrait. The longer side of the page runs vertically.
  - 2. Landscape. The longer side of the page runs horizontally.
- 5. Page Rotation. Allows you to rotate the page.
  - 1. Don't rotate.
  - 2. Clockwise 90 degrees.

- 3. 180 degrees.
- 4. Counterclockwise 90 degrees.
- 6. **Margins**. Margins adjust the size of the page by setting non-zero margins using the selected "user units." The adjustments are:
  - 1. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in Units.
  - 2. **Right**. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in Units.
  - 3. Top. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in Units.
  - 4. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in Units.
- 2. **Images Layout Options**. Allows you to set the image layout options.

2		Images To PDF Option	IS					
ſ	Categories	Images Layout Options						
	New Page Options	Layout Rules						
	Images Layout Options Image Labels	Columns: 1 💠 Rows: 1 💠	Space between Colu Space between F					
	Image Processing	Align Images						
	Image Compression Image Post-processing	Fit: Reduce to Cell 👻 Keep aspect ratio: 🗹	Horizontal alignment: Vertical alignment:					
			<u></u> K	2				

- 1. Layout Rules. Sets the layout rules options.
  - 1. Horizontal count. Specifies the number of columns for the horizontal layout.
  - 2. Vertical count. Specifies the number of columns for the horizontal layout.
  - 3. Horizontal space. Controls the amount of horizontal space around an image.
  - 4. Vertical space. Controls the amount of vertical space around an image.
- 2. Align Images. Sets the image alignment.
  - 1. Fit. When checked, the image will be sized to fit the new PDF page.
  - 2. Keep aspect ratio. Depends on Fit. When checked, the image will be resized to fit

the new PDF page, but there will be no distortion of the page.

- 3. Horizontal alignment. Sets the horizontal alignment of the images.
  - 1. Left.
  - 2. Center.
  - 3. Right.
- 4. Vertical alignment. Sets the vertical alignment of the images.
  - 1. Top.
  - 2. Middle.
  - 3. Bottom.
- 3. Image Labels. Allows you to set the image label options.

L	3	Images To PDF Options	
ſ	Categories	Image Labels	
	New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels	Image Label           Image Label	
	Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	Back color: None Paragraph For Place label above image Add bookmark for each image with the same text as label	nt
		<u>o</u> k	<u>c</u>

1. Image Label. Allows you to add a text label for the image.

- 1. Use special text label for each image. Specifies the text label for each file. You may enter any valid name you like.
  - Macros. Clicking the Macros button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names. The fields are self-explanatory.
  - 2. **Back color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog for you to customize the background color for the image label.

- 3. Paragraph.... Specifies the paragraph settings for the text label.
- 4. Font.... Specifies the font settings for the text label.
- 5. Place label above image. If checked, the label will be placed above the image.
- 6. Add bookmark for each image with the same text as label. If checked, a bookmark will be created for all images with the same text as label.
- 4. Image Processing. Allows you to set the options of image's downsampling and conversion.

2	]	Images To PDF	Options		
	Categories		Image Processir	ng	
	New Page Options	True Color			
	Images Layout Options	No Downsampling	-	96	pixels per ine
	Image Labels		for images above:	128	pixels per ind
	Image Processing	No Conversion	-	<b>Dither</b>	ing
	Image Compression Image Post-processing	Grayscale			
	image Post-processing	No Downsampling	-	96	pixels per ine
			for images above:	128	pixels per ind
		No Conversion	-	<b>Dither</b>	ring
		Indexed			
		No Downsampling	-	96	pixels per in
			for images above:	128	pixels per ind
		No Conversion		<b>T</b> Dither	ring
		Monochrome			
		No Downsampling	-	96	pixels per ind
			for images above:	128	pixels per ine
		No Conversion	-		
L				<u>О</u> К	<u> </u>

- 1. Downsampling and Conversion.
  - True Color. Applies image downsampling and conversion options for true color images.
  - **Grayscale**. Applies downsampling or conversion options for high color and grayscale images.
  - Indexed. Applies downsampling or conversion options for indexed images.
  - Monochrome. Applies downsampling or conversion options for monochrome images.
- 2. **Downsampling**. Downsampling decreases the number of pixels in an image. To downsample images, choose a downsampling method (linear, bilinear, or bicubic downsampling) and enter the desired resolution (in pixels per inch). Then enter a resolution in the for images above text box.
  - 1. **No Downsampling**. Allows you to disable downsampling if the PDF file is to be printed at high resolution.
  - 2. Linear Downsampling to. The classical linear downsampling approach is based on the removal from the original image of those frequencies which are too high to be

represented at a lower resolution level.

- 3. **Bilinear Downsampling to**. Adds pixels by averaging the color values of surrounding pixels. It produces results of medium quality.
- Bicubic Downsampling To. Is a more precise downsampling method based on an examination of the values of surrounding pixels. Using more complex calculations, Bicubic downsampling produces smoother tonal gradations than Linear or Bilinear ones.
- 3. Conversion. Allows you to change the images' color mode for grayscale, monochrome or black & white.
  - 1. No Conversion. No images will be converted.
  - 2. Convert to Grayscale. Images will be converted to grayscale.
  - 3. Convert to Monochrome. Images will be converted to monochrome.
  - 4. Convert to Black & White. Images will be converted to black & white.
  - 5. **Dithering**. When the Dithering option is selected, Photoshop mixes colors in the destination color space to simulate a missing color that existed in the source space. Although dithering helps to reduce the blocky or banded appearance of an image.
- 4. Deskew. If checked, it will straighten a skew scanned image.
- 5. Image Compression. Allows you to set the image compression options.

	1	Images To PDF Options		
ſ	Categories	Image Compression		
	New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels	True Color Compression enabled JPEG Quality: 75 Lossless		
	Image Processing	Grayscale		
	Image Compression Image Post-processing	Compression enabled Auto		
		Indexed		
and and a second se		Compression enabled Auto		
		Monochrome		
		Compression enabled Auto		
		JBIG2 Method: Standard		
		ŌK		

• True Color. Applies image compression options for true color images.

- **Grayscale**. Applies compression options for high color and grayscale images.
- Indexed. Applies compression options for indexed images.
- Monochrome. Applies compression options for monochrome images.
- 1. **Compression enabled**. If checked, it will compress image content depending on the image compression options selected.
  - 1. **Auto**. The best compression settings will be chosen on your behalf whilst retaining reasonable image quality.
  - 2. JPEG. Best used for colored images.
  - 3. Flate. Is used for text, graphics and images.
  - 4. JPEG/ZIP.
  - 5. JPEG 2000.
  - 6. JPEG 2000/ZIP.
- 2. **JPEG Quality**. A percentage value determining image content quality over compression the higher the value entered the lower the compression setting applied and image quality is retained to a higher degree lower values make smaller files.

### 6. Image Post-processing.

2	Images <sup>-</sup>	To PDF Options		
Categories		Image Post-Processin	g options	
New Page Options Images Layout Options Image Labels Image Processing Image Compression Image Post-processing	<ul> <li>Deskew</li> <li>Despeckle</li> <li>✓ Run OCR</li> </ul>	OCR Settings		
			<u>0</u> K	<u>(</u>

- 1. Deskew. This will automatically deskew scanned pages.
- 2. **Despeckle**. Will remove unwanted specs
- 3. Run OCR. Will automatically OCR documents when scanning.

### Plug-ins

This screen controls the behavior of the **Plug-ins**.

Categories			💎 Plug-ins	
Accessionity	-	Available Plugins		
Measurement Identity Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool Forms Commenting		Name ✓ Bookmarks ✓ File Open Client ✓ OCR Plugin ✓ PDF Optimizer ✓ Read Out Loud ✓ Spell Checker	Tracker Software P Tracker Software P Tracker Software P Tracker Software P	Versio roducts (Canada) Ltc 1.0.0 roducts (Canada) Ltc 3.0.0 roducts (Canada) Ltc 1.0.0 roducts (Canada) Ltc 1.0.0 roducts (Canada) Ltc 3.0.0 roducts (Canada) Ltc 3.0.0
Signatures Scanner Presets Plug-ins Send Mail Search Providers Launch Applications Customize UI	Ŧ	More plugins Plugin information File Name: Description: Legal:	En	able <u>S</u> etup
Opdate In the second secon	+	Copyright:		

- 1. Available Plugins. Shows the list of all available plugins.
  - 1. Enable/Disable. Enables or disables the selected plugin.
  - 2. Setup.... Opens the dialog which allows you to adjust the additional settings of the selected plugin.
- 2. Plugin information. This tab displays the information for the plugin. The fields are self-explanatory.

### Send Mail

Send Mail allows you to adjust the options for sending an e-mail.

	Preferences	
Categories	Send Mail Options	
Accessionity	<u>M</u> ethod: Ask before sending	
Measurement	SMTP Server	
Identity	From: Example: ellen@contoso.com	
V Security		
JavaScript	Server Name: Example: smtp.example.com	
🔟 Snapshot Tool	<u>P</u> ort: 25	
Forms	Server Requires <u>A</u> uthentication	
Commenting	User Name:	
Signatures	Password:	
	Connection Security: Authorization	
Scanner Presets	Desktop Client Options	
Plug-ins	Show Clients Dialog Window	
🛁 Send Mail		
Search Providers	Local Store Options	
Launch Applications	Destination <u>Folder</u> : D:\Documents\Mail Send\	
Customize UI	Open the Folder In Explorer on data ready	
👵 Update		
Speech	Pack File Attachments	
Sheerin		
		Cance

1. Method. There are several methods for you to email and send your PDF documents and other attachments.

- 1. Ask before sending.
- 2. **Mail Client**. Sends your completed message through your default e-mail client application with the properties filled as specified on this page. Same as option 1 but no opportunity to edit the message or add additional attachments other than the newly created PDF document.
- 3. **SMTP**. Sends a letter bypassing your e-mail client application using the default values stored in the SMTP options within PDF-XChange. You can setup and use multiple SMTP servers using this option. For information on how to complete and setup your SMTP server information you will need to know your server settings please consult your system administrator for advice as necessary.
- 4. Local. Launches your default e-mail client application and creates a new email text with the required properties completed when you complete this page. This allows you to edit the letter, add additional attachments and send or cancel your message.
- 2. SMTP Server. Allows you to define the SMTP Server properties.
  - 1. From. Enter here your e-mail address.
  - 2. Server Name. Enter the server name.

- 3. **Port**. Specifies the port.
- 4. Server Requires Authentication. This check box allows you to specify the logon information for your server if required. If no authentication required please uncheck this box.
  - 1. User Name. Enter your e-mail user name here.
  - 2. Password. Enter your password.
  - 3. Connection Security. Allows you to specify security.
- 3. Desktop Client Options.
  - 1. Show Clients Dialog Window.
- 4. Local Store Options.
  - 1. Destination Folder.
  - 2. Open the Folder In Explorer on data ready.
- 5. Pack File Attachments.

## Search Providers

### Search Providers

Here you can adjust some settings, or add a custom search provider.



When you select text using the text select tool, you can access the context menu to search that text online. To adjust some settings, or add a custom search provider, go to Edit-> Preferences -> Search Providers.

-	ychology Copy Ctr	rl+C
	Copy as a Rich Text	
	Paste Ct	rl+V
	T Highlight Text	
	1 Underline Text	
	T Crossout Text	
	Add Bookmark Ctrl+Shit	ft+B
	Add Sticky Note	>
	Add Link	>
	Hand Tool	
	Snapshot Tool	
	Select Text Tool	
	Zoom Tool	
	Go To	>
	Print Ct	rl+P
	Internet Search by: 8 Google	Google Search
	Find Ct	rl+F 👩 Ask.com
	⊘ 🕞 Search Ctrl+Shi	ft+F Ask.com Search Engine
	Select All Ctr	rl+A Yahoo! Search
	Read Out Loud Selected Text	Search web using Bing
	Stop Reading	Seznam Vyhledat na Seznamu
	Use Selected Text Style in Bookmark Generation	Meta.UA Ukrainian search provider
		W Wikipedia
		Wikipedia Search

## Launch Applications

### Launch Applications

Launch applications are used to launch PDF with another app. By default, all Adobe reader will be available, or if PDF-XChange is installed, it will be available too.

2	Preferences	
Categories	Launch Applications	
Accessionity	You have the following applications:	
Measurement	Acrobat Reader 11.0 C:\Program Files (x86)\Adobe\Reader 11.0\Reader\AcroRd32.exe	<u>e</u> r
Security	PDF-XChange Viewer C:\Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Viewer\PDFXCview.exe	ß
Snapshot Tool		
Commenting		
Scanner Presets		
Plug-ins		
<ul> <li>Search Providers</li> <li>Launch Applications</li> </ul>		
Customize UI	▲ ▼ <u>N</u> ew <u>E</u> dit	Make Current
Update	Hide applications detected automatically	
	<u>O</u> K Apply	Cancel

To add a new launch applications, go to New...

	New Launch Application	
Fill fields of applica	ew application	
Application Inform	ation	
Name	PDF-XChange Editor	
ivame:	· - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	100000000000
Path:		

Name: You can set a custom name, or leave it blank to populate with the launch application's name. Path: Must point to the install path of the app, such as C:\Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Editor\PDFXEdit.exe Parameter: This will automatically populate with the appropriate value.

Once satisfied, go to OK. You will immediately see the options in the lower right hand corner.

C:	r <b>obat Reader 11.0</b> \Program Files (x86)\Adobe\Reader 11.0\Reader\	AcroRd32.exe
PE C:	0 <mark>F-XChange Viewer</mark> ∖Program Files∖Tracker Software∖PDF Viewer∖PD	FXCview.exe
	- DF-XChange Editor \Program Files\Tracker Software\PDF Editor\PDF	
C;		-XEdit.exe
	K C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Il Rights Reserved.

## Customize UI

### Customizing the UI

To customize the UI, you must go to Edit-->Preferences-->Customize UI:

	Preferences		
Categories	Customize User Interface	e Appearance	
<ul> <li>Registration</li> <li>Accessibility</li> <li>Measurement</li> <li>Identity</li> <li>Security</li> <li>JavaScript</li> <li>Snapshot Tool</li> <li>Forms</li> <li>Commenting</li> <li>Signatures</li> <li>Scanner Presets</li> <li>Plug-ins</li> <li>Send Mail</li> <li>Search Providers</li> <li>Launch Applications</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Fonts         <ul> <li>Menu and Toolbars Font:</li> <li>Segoe UI (Default)</li> <li>Common UI-Font (used in all dialogs and views):</li> <li>Segoe UI (Default)</li> <li>Colors</li> </ul> </li> <li>Colors         <ul> <li>Face:</li> <li>Default</li> <li>Text</li> <li>Selection:</li> <li>Default</li> <li>Window</li> <li>Highlight:</li> <li>Default</li> <li>Window</li> <li>Highlight:</li> <li>Default</li> <li>Window</li> <li>Style/Pattern:</li> <li>Default</li> <li>Show Overlay Shadows</li> <li>Turn off all textured backgrounds to improve UI performance on terminal session</li> </ul> <li>Reset to Defaults</li> </li></ul>	9 pt (Default) 9 pt (Default) 1 9 pt (Default) 1 9 pt (Default v) 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	<ul> <li>▼</li> <li>1</li> </ul>

There, you will see three major groups: Fonts, Colors, and Backgrounds. As you can see in the screenshot above, I am currently using the UI Default settings.

Fonts:

Here you will see two sections: One for the font in the Toolbars, and the other for fonts within windows and dialogs as well as their respective font size.

nts		
Menu and Toolbars Font:		
Segoe UI (Default)	9 pt (Default)	-
Common UI-Font (used in all dialogs and views):		
Segoe UI (Default)	- 9 pt (Default)	-

Toolbar and menu bar Fonts:

1	1										
H	File	Edit	View	Document	Comments	Form	Object	Tools	Advanced	Window	Hel
	Dpen		<b>- -</b>			) 🖨 🗗 1.39% -	) 🕘		E dia	T	T Text Box
14	No Pro	pertie	s								

General UI font for windows and dialogs

	Preferences
Categories	Customize User Interface Appearance
Registration Registration Accessibility Measurement Security Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool Forms Commenting Signatures Scanner Presets Plug-ins Search Providers Launch Applications	Fonts         Menu and Toolbars Font:         Gill Sans Ultra Bold       9 pt (Defaul *         Common UI-Font (used in all dialogs and views):         Consolas       9 pt (Defaul *         Colors         Face:       Defa *         Selection:       Defa *         Window:       Defa *         Window:       Defa *         Backgrounds       *         Type:       Main Background         Style/Pattern:       Default *         Show Overlay Shadows       *         Turn off all textured backgrounds to improve UI performance on terminal session       *         Reset to Defaults       *
	<u>QK</u> Apply <u>C</u> ancel

### Colors

In Colors, you will see a few sections where you can change the default color. For Face, I choose a darker color which you can see in the screenshot below. Selection color refers to the currently active button. Changing the Highlight color will effect Selected Items in the UI such as Tabs and tools.



I find the darker face color to be easier on the eyes and does not conflict with the color of text. Of course the text color can be changed to accommodate darker UI. Window refers to the white space you see beneath some text items.

#### Backgrounds

Here you can choose the way the Editor looks.

- 1. Type- The currently selected background type. All changes you make in the background section will be applied to the selected type.
  - 1. Main Background The scroll bar and other framework.
  - 2. Pages Background The large area behind open pages of a document.
  - 3. Dialog Background Dialog background is for all the context menus and setting dialogs
- 2. Style/Pattern Changes the style and pattern of the selected type.
- 3. Show overlay shadows When activated, shows a gradient from top to bottom.





4. Turn off all Textured backgrounds to improve UI performance on terminal session

# Update

2		Preferences		
Categories		😡 Update App	lication Options	
Measurement	-	Check for Updates		
Identity		Automatically check for updates: weekly		-
Security			🕑 Check for Upd	lates Now
JavaScript				
🔟 Snapshot Tool				
Forms				
Commenting				
👷 Signatures				
Scanner Presets				
Plug-ins				
Send Mail	=			
Search Providers				
Launch Applications				
Customize UI				
🕢 Update				
Speech Speech	-			
		<u>O</u> K	Apply	Cance

### Speech

Speech controls the behavior of the Sound Tool.

Categories	📢 🔊 Speech Options
Accessionity Measurement Identity Security JavaScript Snapshot Tool Forms Commenting Signatures Scanner Presets Plug-ins Send Mail Search Providers Launch Applications Customize UI Update Speech	Read Out Loud Options   Volume:   Volume:   Voice:   Microsoft David Desktop - English (United States)   Vice:   Vice:   Pitch:   Pitch:   Read Comments   Read Form Fields   Test   The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.   Read this text

- 1. Read Out Loud Options. Set the options of reading the text in a PDF document.
  - 1. Volume. Controls the volume.
  - 2. Use default voice. The default voice will be used.
    - 1. Voice. Opens the list of possible voices for you to choose.
  - 3. Use default speech attributes. If checked, the pitch and rate will be set by default. If this option is not checked, you can change the pitch and rate of the voice manually.
  - 4. Read Comments. If checked, the text including comments will be read.
  - 5. Read Form Fields. If checked, the text including form fields will be read.
  - 6. Test. Allows you to test the voice settings.

### View

The **View** menu determines what PDF information is displayed and how.

Toolbars		
Rotate View	•	
✓ 🚺 Bookmarks	Ctrl+B	Toolbars
Thumbnails	Ctrl+T	Rotate View
Other Panes	•	Bookmarks Thumbnails
Page Layout	>	Other Panes
Zoom	•	Page Layout Zoom
Show	•	Show Snap
Snap Ctrl+S	hift+ <mark>;</mark> ▶	Go To Portfolio
Go To	×	Full Screen Mo
Portfolio	•	
Full Screen Mode	F11	

Note that **Bookmarks**, **Thumbnails**, and **Comments** may be "grabbed" and docked either as "Panes" (along the top of the PDF Display area), "Bars" (along the left or right sides of the PDF Display area) or left floating.

You can find some more view options here.

## Toolbars

The Toolbars submenu selects or deselects the following toolbars to be displayed when you run the Editor:



Please see the Toolbars Area for additional information on Customize Toolbars... item.

## Rotate View

Rotate View rotates the PDF page view by 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise.



Please note that these changes are temporary. Akin to rotating your monitor. For permanent page rotation, please see here:

http://www.tracker-software.com/knowledgebase/247-I-have-a-problem-with-rotating-pages-in-a-document-not-being-saved

## Bookmarks

Clicking the Bookmarks item shows the Bookmarks pane. If the Thumbnails pane is displayed, this hides it.



The **Bookmarks** pane has a **Bookmark Editor Toolbar** at the top of the page that will allow you to add, change, or remove Bookmarks from the active document. See **Bookmark Editor** for more information.

The Bookmarks Tree below the Editor Toolbar contains the list of Bookmarks for the active document.

Clicking the **Options** button or right-clicking any bookmark brings up the Bookmark pop-up menu:



The menu options are:

- 1. Go to Bookmark. Changes the current displayed page to the one the bookmark points to.
- 2. New Bookmark.... Create a new bookmark. See Bookmark Editor.
- 3. Cut. Cuts the selected bookmark.
- 4. Copy. Copies the selected bookmark.
- 5. **Paste**. Pastes the copied bookmark.
- 6. Delete. Deletes the selected bookmark.
- 7. Rename. Allows you to rename the current bookmark.
- 8. Set Destination. Sets the bookmark to point to the currently selected page area.
- 9. Make Current Properties Default. Sets the default properties of all bookmarks to match the currentlyselected bookmark.
- 10. Apply Default Properties. Applies the default properties to the selected bookmark(s).
- 11. Text Size. Sets bookmark font size. Valid values are: Small, Medium, Large.
- 12. Wrap Long Bookmark. Toggling this on allows long bookmark text to wrap to multiple lines. If this is unchecked, then long bookmarks will take up only one line but will appear truncated in the bookmarks pane.
- 13. Show/Hide Icons. Shows or hides bookmark icons.
- 14. Use Inherited Zoom.
- 15. Import Bookmarks.... Imports currently selected bookmarks.
- 16. Export Selected Bookmarks.... Exports currently selected bookmarks.
- 17. Export All Bookmarks.... Exports all bookmarks.
- 18. Properties.... See Bookmark Properties and Actions.

### Bookmark Editor

The **Bookmark Editor** feature allows you to Add, Change, or Delete bookmarks in the active document's Bookmark tree.

### IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information!

The Editor is controlled by the **Bookmark Editor Toolbar**:



Each button on the toolbar has a tooltip that appears when you hover the mouse over the button, so if you cannot remember which button does what, the tooltip will help to remind you.

In addition, each button also has a keyboard shortcut associated with it:

OPERATION	KEYBOARD SHORTCUT	ACTION			
Expand All Bookmarks	<none></none>	Expands all of the bookmarks in Bookmarks View.			
Collapse All Bookmarks	<none></none>	Collapse all of the bookmarks in Bookmarks View.			
New Bookmark	Insert	Inserts a new bookmark after the selected bookmark Other New Bookmark options are: Alt+Insert - add bookmark before currently selected CtrI+New - add a bookmark as a last child of currently selected (if current bookmark has no children, a new one will be added) CtrI+Alt+Insert - add a bookmark as a first child of currently selected bookmark.			
Properties	Ctrl+'	Opens Bookmark Properties screen. See Bookmark Properties.			
Delete	Delete	Deletes selected bookmark(s). More than one bookmark may be selected for deletion.			
Ensure visibility of corresponding bookmark	<none></none>	Ensures that all of the parent bookmark items of the selected bookmark will be visible when the document is opened.			

## Bookmark Properties & Actions

The Bookmark Properties pane may be opened either by selecting a Bookmark in the Bookmark list and clicking the Bookmark **Edit** button, or simply right-clicking the selected Bookmark.

IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

▲ General Title Ir		
Title Ir	the desident	
	troduction	
▲ Style		
Fill Color	0,0,0	
Bold F	alse	
Italic F	alse	
Actions		
Mouse Up	io to a page in the document	

- 1. General. Specifies the text of the title to be displayed in the Bookmarks pane.
- 2. Style. Sets the font style.
- 3. Actions. Defines the action(s) to be performed when the Bookmark is selected. The Actions list lists the action(s) to be performed when the Bookmark is selected. At the top of the list there is an editor toolbar for the Actions list:

Edit Actions List  Add  Edit  Go To a Page in the Document		8 ×
Page: 7 X: 27,5 mm Y: 250,5 mm Zoom: 0%		
	<u>0</u> K	Cancel

1. Add.... Adds a new Action to the list.



1. Run a JavaScript. Runs the previously specified JavaScript code.

Add Action: "Run a JavaScript"		×
Edit the Java Script:		
		Ê
		=
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	

2. Go To a Page in the Document. Goes to the specified destination in the current document.

specify a new destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' button below:	Destination Properties
7 PDF-Xchange Viewer v2.5x	Use Page Number:
Introduction	Page: 7 \$ of 209
Rease note that from Suite 2.0.38.x of the R0F-XDarge Verser our help film are provided in R0F format only – any older Verser Help Nex In 'DHV' HTML format are not up to date and should be deleted from your system.	X: 22.5 pt 🗘 🗇 Inherit
Tracker Software Products Ltd are the authors and publishers of a number of award winning unifware applications and dowinger solidits including the best setting <u>PDF-XChange and PDF-Tools</u> products for the creation and manipulation of Adobe compatible PDF	Y: 778.9 pt 🗘 🗋 Inherit
Take. Due tools are used by relations of clients areand the works lot over with due new ubiguitable. Portable Document Format (PGF) created by Motor in and related as an open instructed by provide a common means to prevent document, their world always loss the asian adven- able to the prevent open and the prevent and the prevent and the prevent and the prevent open prevent and the prevent open and always with the PGF to the stress exercises where a well-asian and the prevent and the prevent open prevent open prevents and the advector to the prevent and the prevent open prevents and the prevent open prevents and the prevent	() Use Zoom Level:
To accompany the standard format, Adobe created a free viewer to ensure that anybody could view distributed PDF Nex freely without sequiring the parchase of any additional software - the viewer was made freely available.	Zoom: 0%
To create PDF this the user could parchese Adobe Acrobit from Adobe direct or as the specification of PDF format was freely available to comparing unity and adobe a subtract subtract adoptations from 2nd particles and the tracking comparison area with the tracking of the subtract subtract adoptation and particles and adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adopt particles and particles adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation particles adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation address adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation particles adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation particles adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation particles adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation adoptation particles adoptation	Use Rectangle:
benybody was hoppy, Adobe was the phasethropic author of a world wide standard available to anyone, but users and Sappliers caudi have all measure of advances and intermediate and there was a having bid party uniforme commands equiped by the market and measure and the standard bid bid bid bids are advanced by the standard bid bids and bids and provide any standard bids provided and the low of the bids are standard bids bids are standard bids and provide and provide the standard bids and bids and bids are bids and bids bids are standard bids are standard bids and bids and and provide the standard bids are standard and a photo and bids bids are standard bids and bids and bids are standard and a photo bids and bids are standard bids and the bids are bids and are standard bids bids are standard bids and bids are standard bids and bids are standard bids are standard bids and bids are standard bids are standard bids and bids are standard bi	Width:         572.7 pt         ↓           Height:         778.9 pt         ↓
vol film for some reason only locate to folder, they decided that some functionality and for analysis to other hand Addate based and the file of the source of the file	Use Named Destination:
To be clear - we are not tabling here about the creation of REF Hes - but the ability to see and use thes already created and then to be denaed in Adach's hee TOF reader, most specifically commenting and annotation added to RDF this by non-Addee creation tools - hese could rule here ally the ReF Addee Reader!	
Subtrivity the "Open" PCF formal was not a open and it is an concern that Adde will contrast to extend this is the haurs to regar- cern degree of control over who can create ontherma with the addity to inder advances RPC contains and mediatability. Advances in the park, the primary reasons for the success of this subdards from this haurs that any influence company has been free to create primary primary reasons for the success of this subdards from this haurs that any influence company has been free to create primary the primary primary the success of this subdards from this haurs that any influence company has been free to create primary the primary primary that been free to create primary the primary primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that the primary primary that been free to create primary has been free to create primary that been free to create primary that the primary that been free to create primary that the primary primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that been free to create primary that the total primary that been free to create primary that primary that been free to create primary tha	
Ked that is why it has taken us almost 4 years to create the "tree" PDF-3Charge Viewer to allow PDF files created by any software (not ust ours or Adabh's) that adheres to the open PDF format specification as defined by Adabe - to take advantage of these endended features.	
Nearest- we have not stopped there, so have added only and the control and functionally that users have bid a three possible find startingeness and use will control to do so not the component much any area. The mark these has added advected lactionality to methy, merginality and creates not RDE files, that we make a model charge fits, to allow a los controls are becaused. The possible interface of the control of the control of the control of the control interface of the part and the control of the part of the part of the part of the part of the part of the control of the control of the control interface of the part of the part of the part of the part of the part of the control of the control of the control of the part of t	
An exercise the avert analysis are functioned by extending generate a charge-pair in the TES (EXErgange Vectors and to find all the time the TES former is required in extending with aboth for the two-these for extending vectors are paired with the SE and pairs patholements - if the first has been extended to confidence and where is the TES (Exercised and and and and and and and and and an	
A survey representation and algorithment sharings in their angularing development of all the DST formula is it is receive no languest comballed and set by their angularity of the strategiest of the balance which determinest and controlled in hispoproducity of habita have been by DST format is and angular strategiest of the strategiest of the strategiest of the strategi	
We hope you find this viewer robust and reliable for your purposes - should you need help or support - please visit our free user support forums. We welcome you ideas and suggestions on these forums as well.	4
22001-2011 TRACKER SOFTWARE PRODUCTS	Add Current View Delete

3. Go To a Page in Another Document. Goes to the specified destination in another document.

ou may specif	y a new destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' button below:	Destination Properties
ou may specif	Amenita       71         Manayon       72         Manayon       73         Manayon       74         Manayon       75         Manayon       76	Destination Properties Use Page Mumber: Page: 4
	hard Fages 133 Bard Fages 134 Hard Regime 134 Hard Regime 135 Hard Regime 135 Hard Regime 135 Hard Regime 135 Hard Regime 135 Regime 135 Regi	Target Document File Name: \\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples,

4. Go To a Page in Embedded Document. Goes to the specified destination in embedded document.



	nt> × +	
ou may specify	a new destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' button below:	Destination Properties
	Animana       10         Caragan       10         Caragan       10         Caragan       10         Caragan       10         Caragan       10         Markin       10         Caragan       10         Markin       10         Markin       10         Caragan       10         Markin       10         Caragan       10 <th><ul> <li>Use Page Number:</li> <li>Page: 4</li></ul></th>	<ul> <li>Use Page Number:</li> <li>Page: 4</li></ul>

5. Open a Web Link. Opens the previously specified link on the Internet.

-			
	Type the URL:		
	http://www.tracker-software.	com	*
		<u>O</u> K	Cancel

6. **Open a File**. Opens the specified file.

Current Directory:	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples_Editor\	
File Name:	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples_Editor\New Doc.rtf	Browse
 Dptions		
Open In:	Window set by user preference 👻	
Operation:	Open 👻	
		Browse
Directory:		

7. Execute a Command. Executed the specified command from the menu.

Add Action: "Execute a		
Command N	ame:	
	ок	Cancel

8. Reset a Form. Resets the previously entered data in a form.

Add Action: "Reset a Form"		Select <u>A</u> II <u>D</u> eselect AII <u>I</u> nvert Selection
	Ōĸ	<u>C</u> ancel

9. Submit a Form. Sends the form data to the specified URL.

nter a URL for this link:		
Form-Field Selection		
	Select <u>A</u> ll	
	Deselect All	
	Invert Selection	
	Exclude Selected	
	Include Empty Fields	
Export Format		
Type: FDF Files (*.fdf)		
FDF Convert dates to standard format i		
Field Data		
Comments		
Incremental changes to the PDF		

10. Play a Sound. Plays the previously specified sound file.

• • • •	Browse	
	ОК	Cancel

11. **Show/Hide a Field**. Shows or hides a field in a document. This action may be used for form fields.

Add Action: "Show/Hide a Field"	A	Show Hide
		Select <u>A</u> ll
		Invert Selection
	<u>O</u> K	Cancel

12. Read an Article. Allows you to follow an article in a PDF document.


- 2. Edit.... Edits the selected Action.
- 3. Up. Moves the selected action up in the list.
- 4. Down. Moves the selected action down in the list.
- 5. **Remove...**. Deletes the selected Action.

## Thumbnails

Clicking Thumbnails displays the thumbnail display which allows selecting pages and performing operations.

Pages can be selected in the **Thumbnails** pane by left clicking them. Page ranges can be selected by drawing selection rectangles with the mouse. Hold the **Ctrl** key while left clicking to select multiple pages, independently.

If the **Bookmarks** pane is displayed, then thumbnails are hidden.



The **Thumbnails** pane has a **Pages Thumbnails Editor Toolbar** at the top of the page that will allow you to print, or export Pages from the active document.

1. Pages Options. Allows you to set the page options.



- 1. Cut. Cuts the selected thumbnail.
- 2. Copy. Copies the selected thumbnail.
- 3. Paste. Pastes the copied thumbnail.
- 4. Delete. Deletes the selected thumbnail.
- 5. Insert Pages. Allows you to insert pages from another PDF into the current document. See Insert Pages.
- Extract Pages.... Allows you to extract selected pages from the current PDF to one or more PDF files. See Extract Pages.
- 7. **Replace Pages...** Replaces specified pages of the active document by pages from another one. See **Replace Pages**.
- 8. Delete Pages.... Allows you to delete selected pages from the current PDF. See Delete Pages.
- 9. Crop Pages.... Allows you to crop the active document's pages. See Crop Pages.
- 10. Resize Pages.... Allows you to resize the pages of the active document. See Resize Pages.
- 11. **Rotate Pages...** Allows you to rotate selected pages of the current PDF clockwise, counterclockwise, or inverted. See **Rotate Pages**.
- 12. **Print...** Allows you to print the contents of the currently selected PDF document to a selected printer. See **Print...**
- 13. Export. Allows you to export a selected page(s) of the current document as an image file. See Export.
- 14. Zoom In Thumbnails. Enlarges all pages thumbnails.
- 15. Zoom Out Thumbnails. Reduces all pages thumbnails.
- 16. Properties.... Opens the Page Properties pane.

▲ General		
Number	1	
Label	1	
Width	595.2 pt	
Height	841.9 pt	
Rotation	0°	
Tab Order	Unspecified	
Actions		
Page Open	<empty></empty>	
Page Close	<empty></empty>	

- 1. General. Defines the thumbnail's general properties.
- 2. Actions. Allows you to define the action(s) to be performed when a thumbnail is selected.
  - 1. Run a JavaScript. Runs the previously specified JavaScript.

Add Action: "Run a JavaScript"			×
Edit the Java Script:			
			=
		<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> ancel

2. Go To a Page in the Document. Goes to the specified destination in the current document.

7 PDF-V/hanne Viewer v2 Sz	
7 PDF-XChange Viewer v2.5x	Use Page Number:
Introduction	Page: 7 \$ of 209
Plasar note that from Said 2.0.38.x of the PGF-XICharge Vewer our help film are provided in PGF format only – any older Viewer Help Tils in 1004 MTML format are not up to date and should be distinct from your system.	X: 22.5 pt 🗘 🗍 Inherit
Tracker Software Products Ltd are the authors and publishers of a number of award winning software applications and developer	Y: 778.9 pt 🔶 🗌 Inherit
coolists including the best selling <u>PGF-KChange and PGF-Tools</u> products for the creation and manipulation of Adobe compatible PDF Nes.	r: 778.9 pt 🚽 🗋 innem
Due tools are used by millions of clients around the world to work with the new ubliquitous Portable Document Fouries (PDF) created by Vadobe inc and released as an open standard to provide a common means to present document that would always look the same when /wwwd on a user's R <sup>-</sup> - went it the Vawely party did not have all the forms and images present on their own R <sup>-</sup> - could be contained	<ul> <li>Use Zoom Level:</li> </ul>
within the PDF file to ensure common viewing. To accompany the standard format, Adobe created a free viewer to ensure that anybody could view distributed PDF files freely without	Zoom: 0%
requiring the purchase of any additional software - the slewer was made freely available.	
o competing software authors - software applications from 3rd parties quickly appeared and this healthy competition along with the stability of a freely available viewer at no cost has ensured that the FDC format has now become the' preferred method to share focuments between Government agencies, departments privately and for companies large and mail.	Use Rectangle:
Documents between covertnesse agencias, aspertness privately and for comparise upge and amar. Sverybody was happy, Adobe was the philasthropic author of a world wide standard available to anyone, End users and Suppliers could have all moment of documents and information and there as a healthy trip largery software corresrity expanding the market and	Width: 572.7 pt \$
near an interest of accuments and interesting and marginghing PGF files was alsolidated contracting approximate contracting and marginghing the file was alsolidated for even the smallest business and private pair - which Adobe remained at the top of the heap, providing heavyweight commercial solutions for big business.	Height: 778.9 pt 🔶
Not them The science reason only traces to Adolate, they decided that some functionality would be available to users of their here Adolate faular only if they used a promotion of table) in relative to other this functionality by Adolat – all compressing unitaxes applications would now have to apply to Adolate for a contribute or the new functionality would not be possible with their made by competing and 'non' partitive (FM) contains and metapication tools.	Use Named Destination:
To be clear - we are not tabling here about the creation of PGF files - but the ability to see and use files already created and then to be deved in Addar's here PGF mater, most spectrally commenting and annotation added to PGF files by non-Addeb creation tools - here could not be read by the New Addeb facility.	
addrifty the "Deer" DFC formal was not as open and it is our concern that Addae will contraw to entend this is the future to regar- ame degree of cortexit over who can create underware with the addity to distanced DFC creation and maniputation exclosionity - wheneas in the part, the primary reasons for the success of this standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the projective thread with a distance and the standard pRC creation and the standard for a primary means for the success of this standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the projective thread the standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the projective thread the standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the projective thread the standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the projective thread the standard format has been the fact that any software company has been free to create products for the projective thread the standard format has been the fact that any software company has been for the create products the the projective thread the standard format has been the fact that any software company has been for the create product the two projective the standard the product the projective the product of the projective the projective the standard format has been the standard the standard the standard the standard the projective the standard the projective the standard the projective the standard the projective the standard the s	
Knd that is why it has taken us almost 4 years to create the "Tree" RDF-XDrange Verser to allow RDF films created by any software (not just ours or Adobhy) that adheres to the open RDF format specification as defined by Adobe - to take advantage of these extended leatures.	
Towever - we have not indeped there, we have added onto until features and functionarily that users have total users that extensions and use well continues to do a over the comerge membra and years - monthy then - bala when also added advanced backformality to modify, mempiade and create new PGT fee, that we make a model charge for, to allow as to contras in our backformality to modify, mempiade and create new PGT fee, that we make a model charge for, to allow as to contras in our backformality to modify, mempiade and create new PGT fee, that we have backformative that the part of the test mether that the part of the part and the part of the test method model.	
or involvement of use by our We commit an email of the sections for viewing content a chargedele extra in the (CE-XDarge Viewer and to treat all firs in the CE format as equi- row matter with which body for the base treatment - whitther Adative, can or any other 3-b party software and the viewing - involvement of the other base in the interview.	
The set interest in transmission of an an angle of a set setting in the angle development of the RDF format is it is now no longer controlled and set by A vary important and algebraic through in the angle development of the RDF format is it is now no longer controlled and set by Adds - the RDF format is now efficiently controlled and determined by the <u>RDF Internation Derivation for Enderdeduction</u> and its Nature walky determined and controlled integration of the Adds in the the there after all and antioperative submess development.	
making the PDE format a truly open document format in perpetuity. We hope you find this viewer robust and reliable for your purposes - should you need help or support - please visit our free user	
support for the welcome you ideas and suggestions on these forums as well.	4
52001-2011 TRACKER SOFTWARE PRODUCTS	Add Current View Dele

3. Go To a Page in Another Document. Goes to the specified destination in another document.

u may specify a ne	w destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' button below:	Destination Properties
	Amenia         75           Manchage         76           Marchage         80           Page         80           Marchage         80           Marchage	Destination Properties ● Use Page Number: Page 4   of 225 X: 0 pt   for 1
	Instit Pape	Target Document File Name: \\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples Open In: Window set by user preference

4. Go To a Page in Embedded Document. Goes to the specified destination in embedded document.

<u>О</u> К	Cancel
	<u>0</u> K

This docume	nt> × +	
ou may specify	y a new destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' button below:	Destination Properties
	Internation         10           Carabaseria         10           Carabaseria         10           Carabaseria         10           Paranation         10           Paranation         10           Marine         10           Marine         10           Marine         10           Marine         10           Marine         10           Carabaseria         10           Paranation         10           Paranation	<ul> <li>Use Page Number:</li> <li>Page 4 \$\circ\$ of 233</li> <li>Xi 0 mm \$\circ\$ Inherit</li> <li>Yi 279,4 mm \$\circ\$ Inherit</li> <li>Use Zoom Level:</li> <li>Zoom: Inherit</li> <li>Use Rectangle:</li> <li>Width: 213,9 mm \$\circ\$</li> <li>Height: 279,4 mm \$\circ\$</li> <li>Use Named Destination:</li> </ul>
	Sep 14 Gr 10 15 Partial 18 Danned 19 Danned of Taly 19 Waterweek 10 Bala Nacharg 10 Bala Nacharg 140	

5. Open a Web Link. Opens the previously specified link on the Internet.

Add A	ction: "Open a Web Link"		×
0	Type the URL:		
	http://www.tracker-softv	vare.com	-
		<u>O</u> K	Cancel
		<u>O</u> K	<u>Cancel</u>

6. Open a File. Opens the specified file.

Current Directory:	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples_Editor\	
File Name:	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples_Editor\New Doc.rtf	Browse
Options	146- d d	
Open In:		
Operation:	Open 👻	
Directory:		Browse
Directory:		

7. Execute a Command. Executed the specified command from the menu.



8. Reset a Form. Resets the previously entered data in a form.

	<u>^</u>	Select <u>A</u> ll
		Deselect All
		Invert Selection
	-	

9. Submit a Form. Sends the form data to the specified URL.

orm-Field Selection		
orm-rield Selection		
		Select <u>A</u> ll
		Deselect All
		Invert Selection
		Exclude Selected
	-	Include Empty Fields
xport Format		
Type: FDF Files (*.fdf)		
FDF Convert dates to standard format i		

10. Play a Sound. Plays the previously specified sound file.

Add Action: "Play a Sound"		X
🖲 💿 🗁 Browse	<b>()</b>	
	<u>0</u> K	Cancel

11. **Show/Hide a Field**. Shows or hides a field in a document. This action may be used for form fields.

Add Action: "Show/Hide a Field"		) Show ) Hide
		Select <u>A</u> ll <u>D</u> eselect All Invert Selection
	<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> ancel

12. Read an Article. Allows you to follow an article in a PDF document.

From Already Opened Document [Current Document (Editor Manual.pdf) From File ease choose an article title from the following list: Ease choose an article title from the following list: Course that no articles	ource	Preview Page: 1
ease choose an article title from the following list: ease choose an article title from the following list:		
Document has no articles	From File	
Note the set of the se	ease choose an article title from the following list:	
Document has no articles  Document has no ar		Hand Quetree Instant Matters Farmers (Mr. 47 Jaho 1920) Strandard Sant Sant Santani, Santa
	Document has no articles	Half, Stranger Berner B

- 2. Zoom In Thumbnails. Enlarges all pages thumbnails.
- 3. Zoom Out Thumbnails. Reduces all pages thumbnails.
- 4. Rotate CCW 90° Pages.... Rotates selected pages of the current PDF counterclockwise.
- 5. Rotate CW 90° Pages.... Rotates selected pages of the current PDF clockwise.
- 6. **Print...** Allows you to print the contents of the currently selected PDF document to a selected printer. See **Print...**
- 7. **Properties...** Opens the Page Properties pane.
- 8. Delete. Deletes selected pages from the current PDF.

Each Button on the toolbar has a tooltip that appears if you hover the mouse over the button, so if you cannot remember which button does what, the tooltip will help to remind you.

Right-clicking any Page Thumbnail brings up the pop-up menu.

### Other Panes

In addition to Bookmarks and Thumbnails, there are other panes that may be shown or hidden.

P Destinations	
Content	
Articles	
<b>Signatures</b>	
🚘 Layers	Ctrl+L
💭 Comments	Ctrl+M
I Attachments	Ctrl+Shift+A
Fields	Ctrl+I
Pan and Zoom	
Stamps Palette	
Comment Styles	Palette
Properties Pane	Ctrl+`

- 1. **Destinations**. Opens a pane with a list of destinations.
- 2. Content. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the content.
- 3. Articles. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the articles.
- 4. **Signatures**. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the list of digital signatures added to the PDF document.
- 5. Layers. Correspond to what Adobe® calls "Optional content." Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the optional content layers.
- 6. Comments. Display a list of comments, annotations and markups.
- 7. Attachments. Open a pane within the PDF display area that displays the attached files and allows you to attach PDFs and other types of files to a PDF document.
- 8. Fields. Fields are found within Adobe® Acrobat® Forms. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the Form fields.
- 9. Pan and Zoom. The Pan and Zoom window shows a representation of the current page(s) with a Blue rectangle that shows the area being displayed in the main window in a reduced form.
- 10. Stamps Palette. Opens a selection list of available stamps organized by Palette type.
- 11. Comment Styles Palette. Opens the palette with the list of comments' styles.
- 12. Properties Pane. Opens a pane with the properties list.

# Destinations

The **Destinations** pane displays the list of named destinations.

Options.	陼	New	6	0	Delete	
Name	Page					
🕸 example1		209				
🗣 example2		136				
🗣 example3		62				
					P	

1. **Options**. Displays the list of options for controlling named destinations.



- 1. Go To Destination. Moves to the selected destination.
- 2. New Destination.... Creates the destination at the currently displayed page.
- 3. Delete. Deletes the selected destination.
- 4. Rename. Allows you to rename the selected destination.
- 5. Set. Sets the target of the destination to the currently displayed page.

## Content

The **Content** pane displays the list of pages with a set of objects for each page. The objects are shown due to their order on the page.

Content	×
🔺 📄 Page 1	-
▷ ITT Text	=
💽 Image [w: 224; h: 60]	
▷ Tr Text	
🎱 Path	
▷ Ir Text	
🅙 Path	
▷ Ir Text	
🅙 Path	
▷ Ir Text	
🅙 Path	
▷ Tr Text	
🖻 📄 Page 2	
🖻 📄 Page 3	
🖻 📄 Page 4	
🖻 📄 Page 5	
🖻 📄 Page 6	-
Bookmarks × Content ×	

If you click any object from the content pane list, it will be selected on a page with a blue bounding box. If you wish to move, resize or rotate the object, choose the **Edit Content** button from the Comment And Markup toolbar. The bounding box with selection handles will appear.

It is also possible to change properties of content items that are selected in contents pane, even if Edit Content tool isn't active.

# Articles

Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the articles.

N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.

#### Signatures

**Signatures** opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the list of digital signatures added to the PDF document.



1. Options. See Signing for more information on the following options.



- 2. Validate All Signatures. Allows you to validate all digital signatures.
- 3. Clear All Signatures. Clears all digital signatures.

#### Layers

Layers correspond to what Adobe<sup>®</sup> calls "Optional content." Selecting this option opens a panel within the PDF display area that displays the optional content layers.

Layers	×
Options	×
	2
Bookmarks × Thumbnails × L	ayers ×

It is possible to show or hide content using layers.

1. Options. Allows you to set the layer options.

List Layers for All P List Layers for Visib	-
Reset to Initial Visib	-
Apply Layers Overr	ides
Expand All	
Collapse All	
💷 Rename	F2
Properties	

- 1. List Layers for All Pages. Shows each layer across every page of the document.
- 2. List Layers for Visible Pages. Shows layers only on the currently visible pages.
- 3. Reset to Initial Visibility. Allows you to reset layers to their default state.
- 4. Apply Layers Overrides. Displays all layers, even those which that are not listed in the Layers panel.
- 5. Expand All. Expands the layers tree if they are structured that way.
- 6. Collapse All. Collapses the layers tree if they are structured that way.
- 7. **Rename**. Allows you to rename the current layer.
- 8. **Properties...** Opens the layer Properties pane.
- 2. Rename. Allows you to rename the current layer.
- 3. **Properties...** Opens the layer Properties pane.

# Comments

**Comments** displays a list of Comments, Annotations and Markups:



This displays a list of all Annotations by page. Note that you can go to the page and Annotation by clicking on the comment in this list. Clicking on an Annotation also opens the appropriate toolbar for the comment.



# Attachments

Attachments opens the Attachments pane which allows you to attach PDFs and other types of files to a PDF.

The **Attachments** pane has the **Attachments Editor Toolbar** that will allow you to open, save, add new or delete the existing files from the active document.

Attachments					×
🖏 Options 🔹 🕼	Open 🕞 S	ave 🚯 N	lew	Delete	
Name	Description	Modified	Size	Location in Document	
Stamp1.png		5/13/2008, 1	18.1 KB (1	8,5 Attachments Pane	
tamp1.png		5/13/2008, 1	18.1 KB (1	8,5 Attachments Pane	
					_

1. **Options...** Displays the list of options for controlling the attachments.



- 1. **Open Attachment**. Opens the selected attached file.
- 2. Save Attachment. Saves the selected attachment into an external file.
- 3. **New Attachment...**. Opens the standard **Open Files** dialog for choosing a necessary file. Besides, it is possible to add a new attachment file using the Drag&Drop option. When you drag the file to the Attachment List field and drop it, the following question appears:

PDF-XChange	Editor	
	u want to add 1 file(s) t on't show in the future	o the attachments list?
	Yes	No

- 4. Delete. Deletes the selected attachment.
- 5. Edit Description.... Allows you to add a description to the attached file in the opened New Attachment Description dialog box.

💋 New	Attachment Descriptio	on 🔀
?		
	OK	Cancel

#### Fields

**Fields** are found within PDF Forms. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the Form fields. Note that the fields are listed alphabetically, not in the order they may appear to be in on the page.

Each field is identified by its name and type. You may click on a field to highlight its entry in the pane, or double click a field in the pane to highlight the form field.

N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.

# Pan and Zoom

When this is selected, the **Pan and Zoom** window appears:



The Pan and Zoom window shows a representation of the current page(s) with a Blue rectangle that shows the area being displayed in the main window in a reduced form. You may use the **Hand** control to move the blue rectangle and the main display window will automatically follow that movement.

- 1. The control bar at the top of the window shows the current display area's zoom factor. The blue + and buttons may be used to change the zoom factor, or you may click the down arrow to open a list of standard zoom factors.
- 2. The white arrow buttons navigate to the various pages of the currently displayed PDF document.
- 3. The Camera button allows you to make a snapshot of the highlighted area of the page.

# Stamps Palette

**Stamps Palette** opens the **Stamps Palette** dialog with a selection list of available stamps organized by Palette type.

Stamps Palette			×		
📀 Zoom In 💿 Zoom Out 📂 New from File 💼 New from Clipboard 💷 🛅					
Standard					
APPROVED	AS IS	CONFIDENTIAL	DEPARTMENTAL		
Approved	As Is	Confidential	Departmental		
DRAFT	EXPERIMENTAL	EXPIRED	FINAL		
Draft	Experimental	Expired	Final		
FOR COMMENT	FOR PUBLIC RELEASE	NOT APPROVED	NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE		
For Comment	For Public Release	Not Approved	Not For Public Release		
SOLD	TOP SECRET				
Sold	Top Secret				

- 1. Zoom In. Enlarges the size of the thumbnail images in the Stamps area.
- 2. Zoom Out. Reduces the size of the thumbnail images in the Stamps area.
- 3. New from File.... Creates a stamp from a selected image file or PDF document page. You could also scan your signature into a file to allow you to then 'Stamp' a document with your physical signature - however - should you do this - we strongly recommend you use the Flatten Comments option to ensure your signature is not easily interfered with in the final PDF once distributed.
- 4. New from Clipboard.... Creates a stamp from an image contained in the clipboard.
- 5. Rename. Allows you to change an existing stamp's name.
- 6. Delete. Deletes the selected stamp from the collection.

# Comment Styles Palette

Comments Styles Palette opens the palette with the list of comments' styles.



The toolbar at the top allows you to do the following things:

- 1. **Reset**. Resets the style of the selected comment to default. All custom styles except for the default ones will be removed.
- 2. Clone. Creates the style of the comment, identical to the selected one.
- 3. Rename. Allows you to rename the selected style.
- 4. **Reset**. Resets the style of the selected comment to default. All custom styles except for the default ones will be removed.
- 5. **Delete**. Deletes the selected comment style.
- 6. **Properties**. If you select the **Properties** item, the pane appears with the tabs which allow you to adjust the appearance and other properties of the selected tool.
- 7. Set Current. Sets the selected custom style to the current tool's style.

# **Properties Pane**

The **Properties** pane becomes active when an object on pdf page is selected. The options in the properties pane are dynamic and differ depending on what is selected. For example while typing in somewhere like a typewriter annotation or text box, the properties pane looks like this:

Character	
Fill Color	0,0,0
Font	Courier New
Font Size	12 pt
Bold	False
Italic	False
Underline	False
Strikethrough	False
Script Style	No
Paragraph	
Text Alignment	Left

While not typing somewhere, the properties pane is dependant on the active tool, or object:

Text Bo	ox Tool Properties	× Typewr	riter Tool Properties
d General		▲ General	
Keep Selected	True	Keep Selected	True
Exclusive Mode	False	Exclusive Mode	False
Subject		▲ Subject	
Subject Kind	Default	Subject Kind	Default
Subject	Text Box	Subject	Typewriter
Style		▲ Style	
Fill Color	255,255,255	Fill Color	× None
Stroke Color	255,0,0	Stroke Color	0,0,0
Border	Solid	Border	Solid
Width	— 1 pt	Width	— 0 pt
Opacity	100%	Opacity	100%
Blend Mode	L Normal	Blend Mode	Normal
Default Text Form	nat	▲ Default Text For	mat
Text Color	0,0,0	Text Color	0,0,0
Font	Arial	Font	Courier New
Font Size	12 pt	Font Size	12 pt
Text Alignment	Left	Text Alignment	Left

Rectan	gle Tool Properties	× Stam	p Tool Properties
▲ General		▲ General	
Keep Selected	True	Keep Selected	True
Exclusive Mode	False	Exclusive Mode	False
▲ Subject		▲ Subject	
Subject Kind	Default	Subject Kind	Default
Subject	Rectangle	Subject	Stamp
▲ Style		▲ Style	
Fill Color	0,0,0	Stroke Color	255,0,0
Stroke Color	255,255,0	Opacity	100%
Border	Solid		
Width	📕 10 pt		
Opacity	100%		
Blend Mode	E Normal		

Distan	ce Tool Properties	×	
▲ General			
Keep Selected	True	1	
Exclusive Mode	False		
<ul> <li>Subject</li> </ul>			
Subject Kind	Default		
Subject	Dimension Line		
▲ Style			
Fill Color	× None		
Stroke Color	255,0,0		
Border	Solid		
Width	— 1 pt		
	100%	Link Crea	ation Tool Properties
	Normal		ation roberties
Line Endings		4 General	T
	- Closed Arrow	Keep Selected	True
End	-> Closed Arrow	Stroke Color	* None
Start Scale	Auto		
End Scale	Auto	Border	
▲ Leader		Width	
Leader Length	5.3 mm	Highlight Mode	abc Invert
Leader Extension			
Leader Offset			
Caption			
Show Caption	Yes		
Inline Caption			
▲ Size & Dimension			
	1mm 1m		
Sticky N	ote Tool Properties	× Soun	d Tool Properties
General		▲ General	
Keep Selected	True	Keep Selected	True
Exclusive Mode		Exclusive Mode	
<ul> <li>Subject</li> </ul>		▲ Subject	
Subject Kind	Default	Subject Kind	Default
	Sticky Note	Subject	
▲ Style		▲ Style	
	255,255,0		64,85,255
	Comment		Sound
	100%		100%

Clicking **Properties** opens the **Properties Pane** which displays the currently set properties for the selected object. To change any of them you have to click it. In the end of a box with property's name there appears an arrow. After you click the arrow, you will see

available options for changing each of the properties. Some items only provide information about an object but cannot be edited.

See also Destinations Content Articles Signatures Layers Comments Attachments Fields Pan and Zoom Stamps Palette Comment Styles Palette

# Page Layout

**Page Layout** determines how pages are arranged in the PDF document pane. Selecting **Page Layout** opens the layout submenu:

Single Page	
✓ ☐ Continuous	
Two Pages	
Two Pages Continuous	
✓ Show Gaps Between Pages	Ctrl+Shift+G
Show Cover Page in Two Page	es View
Right-to-Left Pages Layout	
Automatically Scroll	Ctrl+Shift+H
✓ Standard Layout	
Ribbon Layout	

- 1. **Single Page**. Only one page at a time is displayed. To change pages you must use the **Go To menu** or the page selection toolbar.
- 2. **Continuous**. The pages are displayed as a scrollable pane. This allows you to view the bottom of one page and the top of the next simultaneously.
- 3. **Two Pages**. Two pages are displayed side by side. The left page is always an even-numbered page and the right page is the next odd-numbered page.
- 4. **Two Pages Continuous**. The pages are displayed two-up as a scrollable pane. This allows you to view the bottom of one page and the top of the next simultaneously.
- 5. Show Gaps Between Pages. Shows or hides gaps between pages.
- 6. Show Cover Page in Two Pages View. The cover page is displayed in facing mode.
- 7. Right-to-Left pages Scroll. View pages from right to left rather than left to right.
- 8. Automatically Scroll. Allows you to scroll through pages without using keystrokes or mouse actions.
- 9. Standard Layout. Changes scrolling between pages to vertical mode.
- 10. Ribbon Layout. Changes scrolling between pages to horizontal mode.

# Zoom

Zoom opens a dialog box to allow you to select or enter the zoom percentage to use to display the PDF pages.

✓ 1:1 Actual Size	Ctrl+1
Fit Page	Ctrl+0
Fit Width	Ctrl+2
Fit Height	
🔹 Fit Visible	Ctrl+3
Zoom To	Ctrl+Shift+M
🔍 Loupe Tool	
Pan and Zoom	i l

- 1. Actual Size. Sets the Zoom percentage to 100%, forcing the PDF page to display at actual size.
- 2. Fit Page. Fits the entire PDF page within the borders of the view pane.
- 3. Fit Width. Fits the PDF to the width of the view pane. Scroll bars are provided to enable you to scroll the PDF page as desired.
- 4. Fit Height. Fits the PDF to the height of the view pane.
- 5. Fit Visible. Page is displayed without margins.
- 6. **Zoom To...** Opens a dialog box to allow you to select or enter the zoom percentage to use to display the PDF pages.



7. Loupe Tool.

The **Loupe Tool** opens a special dialog window that is linked to a scrollable, resizable rectangular that acts as a cursor and permits the selection of a portion of the PDF page/file.

The selected area can be resized and its contents view size zoomed larger or smaller to suit. Further - like the main 'snapshot' tool - the defined Loupe content area can also be copied to the clip board and used as required.

c and released as an open standard to	provide a common means to present documents that would always look the sa
n a user's PC - even if the Viewing p	Loupe
PDF file to ensure common viewing	
pany the standard format, Adobe cre the purchase of any additional some	
PDF files the user-could purchase Ac ting software authors - software op	purchase of any additional sof
of a freely available viewer at no co	id.
ts between Government agencies, de y was happy, Adobe was the philanth manner of documents and informat	F files the user could purchase
that inexpensive solutions for creati ilst Adobe remained at the top of the	र software authors - software द
for some reason only known to Ac nly if they used a product officially 'e	freely available viewer at no
2 to apply to Adobe for a certificate 2DF creation and manipulation tools.	etween Government agencies,
ar - we are not talking here about the	ti
Adobe's free PDF reader, most spec	ifically commenting and annotation added to PDF files by non-Adobe creation

The toolbar at the bottom of the page allows you to change the zoom percentage, and clicking the Snap shot (camera) icon copies the displayed area to the clipboard as a bitmap.

#### 8. Pan and Zoom.

When this is selected, the Pan and Zoom window appears:



The Pan and Zoom window shows a representation of the current page(s) with a Blue rectangle that shows the area being displayed in the main window in a reduced form. You may use the **Hand** control to move the blue rectangle and the main display window will automatically follow that movement.

1. The control bar at the bottom of the window shows the current display area's zoom factor. The blue + and - buttons may be used to change the zoom factor, or you may click the down arrow to open a list of standard zoom factors:

6400%
3200%
2400%
1600%
800%
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
12.5%
8.33%
Actual Size
Fit Page
Fit Width

- The white arrow buttons navigate to the various pages of the currently displayed PDF document.
   The Camera button allows you to make a snapshot of the highlighted area of the page.

#### Show

Show opens a dialog to allow you to select the displaying of rulers, grid, guides or JavaScript Console.



- Show Rulers shows horizontal and vertical rulers, which let you check the size of objects in your documents.
   Show Grid displays the grid behind transparent objects. Grid is used to accurately line up text and objects in a document.
- Show Guides shows the guides for lining up objects, such as form fields. To create a guide, drag down from the horizontal ruler, or drag to the right of the vertical ruler.
- 3. Show JavaScript Console. To perform a JavaScript action on a PDF, launch the JavaScript Console with the keyboard shortcut CTRL+J or go to View Menu | Show JavaScript Console.

JavaScript Console	
🕼 Run 💜 Clear 🖾 JS Options	
1	

When the **JavaScript Console** opens, paste or write your JavaScript code into the top of the two windows and click the **Run...** button. The code will run and if there are any errors the message will be displayed in the window below your code.

The **Clear** button removes the error message from the window below. The **Options...** button opens the **JavaScript** tab from the **Preferences...**.

#### Snap

**Snap** allows you to control how drawing objects "snap" to various things such as grid lines, guides and other objects. This feature helps to save time when you're using line drawing tools.



- 1. Snap to Grid. The objects snap to grid intersection points.
- 2. Snap to Guides. Objects snap to align with vertical or horizontal guidelines.
- 3. Snap to Objects. When objects are set to snap to each other, they use snap points on either the source or target object. Snap points are set using options.

See more information regarding snapping preferences here.

## Go To

Selecting Go To opens the Page Selection submenu:



The options are:

- 1. First Page. Moves the view to the top of the first page of the document. If you are on the first page, this option is disabled.
- 2. Previous Page. Moves the view to the top of the previous page of the document. If you are on the first page, this option is disabled.
- 3. Next Page. Moves the view to the top of the next page of the document. If you are on the last page, this option is disabled.
- 4. Last Page. Moves the view to the top of the last page of the document. If you are on the last page, this option is disabled.
- 5. Go to Page.... Opens a dialog box to allow you to enter a page number.

💋 Go To P	age	X
#	Enter the page	number: (7 of 209)
	<u>0</u> K	Cancel

- 6. Back. Moves to the previous view. If you are on the first view, this option is disabled. Reopens closed documents that have been viewed during the session.
- 7. Forward. Moves to the next view. If you are on the last view, this option is disabled.
- 8. Previous Document. Goes to the previous tab (left).
- 9. Next Document. Goes to the next tab (right).
# Portfolio

N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.

## Full Screen Mode

Full Screen Mode is used for presentations where a speaker may have the PDF pages displayed by a projector.

Please see the Full Screen from Preferences for additional information on Full Screen Mode.

#### Document

The Document menu allows you to Insert, Extract, Delete, Rotate, or Crop pages, or Sign the document.

Warning! If you are running in FREE mode, using any function from this menu except Rotate Pages will cause the saved PDF to have unremovable watermarks!

IMPORTANT! These functions are mostly PRO features, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information!



Header and Footer Watermarks Background Bates Numbering Insert Pages Extract Pages Replace Pages... Delete Pages Crop Page Tool Resize Pages... Rotate Pages OCR Pages... Signing Redaction

#### Header and Footer

To add, remove or edit the Header and Footer, click Add..., Remove All... or Manage....



1. Add.... To add header or footer to PDF document you have to type text into the appropriate box. The results will be shown in the preview.

ext			Margins
Left Header Text:	Central Header Text:	Right Header Text:	Top: 36 pt 🗘
			Bottom: 36 pt 🗘
.eft Footer Text:	Central Footer Text:	Right Footer Text:	Left: 36 pt 🗘
			Right: 36 pt 🌲
	][		Units: point 👻
Font	Insert Date	Insert Page Number	Page Number And Date Format
	\$ of 209		Page Range Options
	ER SOFTWARE PRODUCTS		

- 1. Text. The text to be displayed in the document's header and footer.
  - 1. Left Header Text. The text to be displayed in the left header.
  - 2. Central Header Text. The text to be displayed in the central header.
  - 3. **Right Header Text**. The text to be displayed in the right header.
  - 4. Left Footer Text. The text to be displayed in the left footer.
  - 5. Central Footer Text. The text to be displayed in the central footer.
  - 6. **Right Footer Text**. The text to be displayed in the right footer.
- 2. **Margins**. Margins adjust the size of the page by setting non-zero margins using the selected "user units". The adjustments are:
  - 1. **Top**. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in Units.
  - 2. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in Units.

- 3. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in Units.
- 4. **Right**. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in Units.
- 5. **Units**. The units of measure to use for the margin movements. Valid values are: point, inch, centimeter, millimeter and pica.
- 3. Font.... Specifies the Font to use when displaying the Header and Footer text.
- 4. Insert Date. Inserts the date to be shown in the Header and Footer text.
- 5. Insert Page Number. Inserts the page number to be shown in the Header and Footer text.
- 6. Page Number And Date Format.... Adjusts the format of the page number and date.

Page Number Format: 1	Date Format:	m/d	
	Page Number Format:	1	
Start Page Number: 1	Start Page Number:	1	\$

- 7. **Preview**. Shows the change of the header's or the footer's appearance before you add them to the document.
  - 1. **Preview Page**. Sets the page number to be shown in the preview window.
  - 2. Pages Range Options.... Specifies the page(s) for adding header and footer.

O Selected Pages	
<ul> <li>Current Page</li> </ul>	
O Pages:	(total 209 pages)
Subset: All Pages	

- 1. All. Header and footer will be added to all pages.
- 2. Selected Pages. Header and footer will be added to the selected pages only.
- 3. Current Page. Header and footer will be added to the current page only.
- 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
- 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document.
  - 1. All Pages. Header and footer will be added to all of the specified pages.
  - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range header and footer will be added to odd-numbered pages only: 1, 3, 5, etc.
  - 3. **Even Pages Only**. Within the specified Pages Range header and footer will be added to even-numbered pages only: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 8. Settings. Allows you to save the current settings and manage presets.

2. Remove All.... Removes all headers and footers from the document.



3. Manage.... Allows you to adjust headers and footers.

Add New
Edit
Remove
Remove All

- 1. List. Displays the list of all headers and footers that were added to the document.
- 2. Add New....Opens the Add Header and Footer dialog box for adding new headers and footers.
- 3. Edit.... Opens the Add Header and Footer dialog box for editing the selected header or footer.
- 4. **Remove**. Removes the selected header or footer.
- 5. Remove All. Removes all headers and footers.
- 6. Close. Closes the dialog.

## Watermarks

You can add text and graphic's based watermarks to your document, remove or edit them.



1. Add.... Allows you to create a Text or Image watermark, which will be added to the page(s) of your PDF document.

ource	Preview Page: 8
<u>I</u> ype: Text →	
Text:	
	Introduction
Eont: Eont Align: Left -	System Regularements proderstartism TEL vs. IRNo sension Command: Line option Regularity distribution
	Please rote that from Euld 3 a of the PCF-XEDange Editor our help tiles are provided in primarily via our online Help systems through a download of the entries contents is also generally provided in PCF format. If required a syst Viewer Help film in TOHM PLAN. If strant are not be to date and shadle be divided from your system.
ppearance	Tracker Software Products LM are the actions and publishers of a number of event winning software applications and developer toolkits including the best solling PDF-ACIanage and PDF-Tools products for the creation, menginghand, winning, additional and product and TDD developed comparison PDF files.
Rotation: 0 \$ Opacity: 100% \$	Our trok are used by millions of dente ansard for world to work with two two absplaces. Portain Document Format (PCP) creating be Advin by can of stress are an open stressioned to provide a common two present documents that would always lock the same when viewed on a sam's PC – seen TB wireing party did not these all the forte and manage sometime that are ome PC - adults excitational stress for RTB in a sometime. Note:
Scale: 50%	To accompany the ulandaria format, Acade crashed a fine viewer to ensure that anyhody could view distubilist SDP film finely without respiring the purchase of any additional isoftware - the viewer was made their available. To create SDP films the use could academa Addition Acade (track of an at the specification of SDP format
acement	was their vasiable to computing influenza autors - withows applications from 3rd particle gatching apparent and this healty comparison lange with the balls of a their variable inverse at a cost the amount but the RFO format has now location that particular and match to same documenta between Gevernment approxim, departments privately and for comparison lange and match.
Horizontal Offset: 0 mm 💠 from: Center 🔻	Everytopic was heapy, Adom ones the philambrogic author of a world wish interact available to arrayme, Not save and Supplement calls that all interact of accounts and information of how was in a balance of the philambrogic control of the same of the same same of the same of the same heavy same of the same providing heavy same of the same providing heavy same of the same providing heavy same of the same providing heavy same of the same providing heavy same of the same providing heavy same of the same of th
Vertical Offset: 0 mm 💠 from: Center 👻	And them for some reason only losses to study, they decided that some functionality would be available to avail of their two solas basker carryly from used a product distributy function of one through they shade all competing software applications would need have to apply to shades for a centralist or the new functionality would not be possible worth their match to comparing and throw centerful Direvation and anapplication bask.
As Background Units: millimeter V	To be clear - we are not bailing have abud the creation of RPF Nan - but the ability to say, modify and an fiss alwady rounded and them to be viewed in Abiotivi have RPF reads, most specifically commenting and annotation added to RDPF files by non-Abibe creation bode - these could not be read by the Prev Adobe Reader!
ages Range: selected 253 of 253 pages	Solidarly the Upper FID Finance less not to open and it was concern that Addee would contribut to enter the the future to repay to some flapse of controls nor who can read work was the the addition the declaration and morpholication functionally, in whereas it the particle prevanes the the solid control field finand has a programmed and the source of the particle prevanes the the solid control open which interference them are party including Addies.
<u>All</u> <u>Selected Pages</u>	And that is why & years appowe decided to create the 'Yees' FDF-XDrange Viewer to allow FDF files created by any suffware (vol. just cours or Adabric) that adamves to the open FDF formal specification as defined by Adabe - to take advantage of these entrunded tradume.
Current Page	However - we have not alopped there and we are now pleased to continue the legacy of the FREE PDF- XChange Viewer with the all NEW PDF-XChange Caller (. We have added a hold clauful feature and faceformit that cam have lated to they would the divertageous and academic only control man and
Pages: [] (total 253 pages)	PDI 3Darge hite d -
Subset: All Pages	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 1 < > < >

- 1. Source. Specifies the settings of the watermark.
  - 1. **Type**. The type of the watermark.
    - 1. **Text**. While creating a text watermark you may set up the font, color and size of the text. Also you may set the opacity of the watermark and the degree of text rotation.
      - 1. Text. The text to be displayed on the page.
      - 2. **Macros**. Clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate watermarks names. The fields are self-explanatory.
      - 3. Font. Specifies the font to use when displaying the watermark.
      - 4. Align. Sets the text watermark alignment.

- 2. **File**. If you are adding image watermarks you are able to set up the size, rotation, opacity and placement of the watermark on the page.
  - 1. File. The Browse button opens a standard **Open Files** dialog box to select the necessary image file.
  - 2. Page. Sets the page of an image of which the watermark will be created.
- 2. Appearance. Specifies the appearance of the watermark.
  - 1. Rotation. Determines the rotation of the watermark. Zero degrees is horizontal.
  - 2. Opacity. Allows you to set the percentage of the watermark transparency.
  - 3. Scale. Allows you to enter the zoom percentage of the watermark.
  - 4. Scale relative to target page.
- 3. **Placement**. The placement fields offer you a quick and convenient way to position a watermark wherever you need to on the PDF page.
  - 1. **Horizontal Offset**. Once you have positioned the Watermark to one of the 9 starting positions, you may "tune" the position by applying horizontal offset values to the watermark. The Units may be mm, inches, or points.
  - 2. **Vertical Offset**. Once you have positioned the Watermark to one of the 9 starting positions, you may "tune" the position by applying vertical offset values to the watermark. The Units may be mm, inches, or points.
  - 3. **Positions**. Selecting one option from each of these buttons will position the watermark to one of 9 starting positions on the page.
  - 4. Units. The valid Unit values are points, inches, centimeters, millimeters, or picas.
  - 5. As Background. The watermark will be placed as a background.
- 4. Pages Range. Allows you to select the page(s) for adding a watermark.
  - 1. All. Watermark will be added to all pages.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Watermark will be added to the selected pages only.
  - 3. Current Page. Watermark will be added to the current page only.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document.
    - 1. All Pages. Watermark will be added to all of the specified pages.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range watermark will be added to oddnumbered pages only: 1, 3, 5, etc.
    - 3. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range watermark will be added to evennumbered pages only: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 2. **Remove All...** Removes all watermarks from the document.

🛿 Remove Watermarks		×
Are you sure you want to r	remove all existing Watermar	ks from the document?
	<u>Y</u> es	<u>N</u> o

3. Manage.... Allows you to adjust watermarks.

ist:		
#	Title	Add New
t –	27.01.2015, 20:48:41	
2	27.01.2015, 20:51:04	Edit
		Remove
20000		Remove All
and the second		

- 1. List. Displays the list of all watermarks that were added to the document.
- 2. Add New.... Opens the Add Watermark dialog box for adding new watermarks.
- 3. Edit.... Opens the Edit Watermark dialog box for editing the selected watermark.
- 4. **Remove**. Removes the selected watermark.
- 5. **Remove All**. Removes all watermarks.
- 6. Close. Closes the dialog.

#### Background

**Background** allows you to add a background to your PDF document. It may be created of an image file or just a color and it may be applied to the whole document or the selected pages only.



1. Add.... Allows you to create a background, which will be added to the page(s) of your PDF document.

Source	Preview Page: 8
<ul> <li>● From Color:</li> <li>Name:</li> <li>Page:</li> <li>0</li> <li>↓ (of 0)</li> </ul>	Introduction See Insurantia Roundaria
Appearance Rotation: 0	<text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text>
Pages Range: selected 253 of 253 pages  All Current Page Pages: I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8     9     10     11     12     13     4     >     8

- 1. Source. Specifies the settings of the background.
  - 1. **From color**. Opens the standard color selection dialog for you to customize the background color for the document.
  - 2. File. The Browse button opens a standard Open Files dialog box to select the necessary image file.
  - 3. Page. Sets the page of an image of which the background will be created.
- 2. Appearance. Specifies the appearance of the background.
  - 1. Rotation. Determines the rotation of the background image. Zero degrees is horizontal.
  - 2. **Opacity**. Allows you to set the percentage of the background transparency.
  - 3. Scale. Allows you to enter the zoom percentage of the background image.
- 3. Placement. The placement fields offer you a quick and convenient way to position the background

image wherever you need to on the PDF page.

- 1. **Horizontal Offset**. Once you have positioned the image file to one of the 9 starting positions, you may "tune" the position by applying horizontal offset values to the irhemage. The Units may be mm, inches, or points.
- Vertical Offset. Once you have positioned the image file to one of the 9 starting positions, you
  may "tune" the position by applying vertical offset values to the image. The Units may be mm,
  inches, or points.
- 3. **Positions**. Selecting one option from each of these buttons will position the image to one of 9 starting positions on the page.
- 4. Units. The valid Unit values are points, inches, centimeters, millimeters, or picas.
- 4. Page Range. Allows you to select the page(s) for adding the background.
  - 1. All. The background will be added to all the pages in the document.
  - 2. Selected Pages. The background will be added only to the selected pages.
  - 3. Current Page. The background will be added only to the current page.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Page Ranges to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
    - 1. All Pages. The background will be added to all of the specified pages.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. The background will be added to odd-numbered pages within the specified Page Range(s) only: 1, 3, 5, etc.
    - 3. Even Pages Only. The background will be added to even-numbered pages within the specified Page Range(s) only: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 2. **Remove...** Removes the background from the document.

Remove Background		×
Are you sure you want	to remove Backgroun	id from the document?
	<u>Y</u> es	No

3. Update.... Opens the Edit Background dialog box for editing the background.

2 Edit Background	×
Source	Preview Page: 8
From Color:	Introduction
Appearance Rotation: 0	A sector of the
Vertical Offset: 0 mm Units: Center Units: millimeter Pages Range: selected 253 of 253 pages	And Then We save suscess only how the Adults, they detailed that saves hardwardly would be audited to asset of the the Adult Adults about only if Nay ways and activation of Nay Markov and Adults
All     Selected Pages     i     Current Page     Pages:     Ii (total 253 pages)     Subset: All Pages	And this when is our model to be that the The or TPS Charge binary table TPS for any other to be the transmission of the trans
Settings: <custom></custom>	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

## **Bates Numbering**

**Bates Numbering** is used to add an identifying electronic number or date to each page of the PDF document when it is necessary to label the document.

#6	Add
	Add to Multiple Files
#	Remove All
#	Manage

1. Add.... Allows you to add bates number to the PDF document. The results will be shown in the preview.

ext			Margins
eft Header Text:	Central Header Text:	Right Header Text:	Top: 36 pt 🗘
			Bottom: 36 pt 🗘
.eft Footer Text:	Central Footer Text:	Right Footer Text:	Left: 36 pt 🗘
			Right: 36 pt 🌲
			Units: point 👻
Font	Insert Date	Add Bates Numbering	Page Number And Date Format
review			
Preview Page 7	\$ of 209		Page Range Options
7 PDF-XCha Introduction support forums. We we	nge Viewer v2.5x	these forums as well.	Page Range Options

- 1. Text. The text to be displayed in the document's header or footer.
  - 1. Left Header Text. The text to be displayed in the left header.
  - 2. Central Header Text. The text to be displayed in the central header.
  - 3. Right Header Text. The text to be displayed in the right header.
  - 4. Left Footer Text. The text to be displayed in the left footer.
  - 5. Central Footer Text. The text to be displayed in the central footer.
  - 6. **Right Footer Text**. The text to be displayed in the right footer.
- 2. **Margins**. Margins adjust the size of the page by setting non-zero margins using the selected "user units". The adjustments are:
  - 1. **Top**. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in Units.
  - 2. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in Units.

- 3. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in Units.
- 4. Right. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in Units.
- 5. **Units**. The units of measure to use for the margin movements. Valid values are: point, inch, centimeter, millimeter and pica.
- 3. Font.... Specifies the Font to use when displaying the bates number.
- 4. Insert Date. Inserts the date to be shown in the Header and Footer text.
- 5. Add Bates Numbering.... Allows you to adjust the bates numbering settings.

Bates Numbering F	ormat	<u>Σ</u>
Number of Digits:	3	÷
Start Number:	1	\$
Prefix:		
Sufix:		

6. Page Number And Date Format.... Adjusts the format of the page number and date.

Date Format:	m/d	*
Page Number Format:	Bates Numbering	-
Start Page Number:	1	\$

- 7. **Preview**. Shows the change of the bates number's appearance before you add it to the document.
  - 1. **Preview Page**. Sets the page number to be shown in the preview window.
  - 2. Pages Range Options.... Specifies the page(s) for adding the bates number.

Setup Pages Range Pages Range: selected 1 of 209 p	nages	X
	, and the second s	
Selected Pages 1		
Current Page		
Pages:	i) (total 20	19 pages)
Subset: All Pages		is hades)
	<u>0</u> K	Cancel
	and the second second second	

- 1. All. The bates numbering will be added to all pages.
- 2. Selected Pages. The bates numbering will be added to the selected pages only.
- 3. Current Page. The bates numbering will be added to the current page only.
- 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
- 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document.
  - 1. All Pages. The bates numbering will be added to all of the specified pages.
  - 2. **Odd Pages Only**. Within the specified Pages Range the bates numbering will be added to odd-numbered pages only: 1, 3, 5, etc.
  - 3. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range the bates numbering will be added to even-numbered pages only: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 2. Add to Multiple Files.... Allows you to add bates number to more than one PDFdocument.

ource Files							
Title	Location	Size	Modified	Pages Count	Pages Size	Pages Range	
PDF documentl(1).pdf	G:\XChange	14 MB (14 67	14.10.2013, 1	215	215.9 x 279.4	All Pages	
PDF documentl(2).pdf	G:\XChange	14,33 MB (15	10.10.2013, 9	225	215.9 x 279.4	All Pages	
Q Add Files	Add F	older		Page Bar	are Options		
P→ Add Files ▼ utput Options	C Add F	older		Page Rar	nge Options	A A	<b>• •</b>
			umber (e.g. 000				• <u>•</u>
utput Options <ul> <li>Replace file names with</li> </ul>	h starting and		umber (e.g. 000				• <u>•</u> <u>•</u>
Intput Options         Replace file names with         File Name:	h starting and %[File	ending Bates n					
Intput Options         Replace file names with         File Name:	h starting and %[File Folder: C:\Use	ending Bates n Name]					
Output Options           Replace file names with           File Name:           Destination F	h starting and %[File Folder: C:\Use s	ending Bates n Name] ers\lesya\Docur					
Output Options <ul> <li>Replace file names with</li> <li>File Name:</li> <li>Destination F</li> <li>Overwrite Existing Files</li> </ul>	h starting and %[File Folder: C:\Use s ts after the nu	ending Bates n Name] ers\lesya\Docur	nents\				

- 1. Source Files.... Selects the files for adding the bates numbering.
- 2. Add Files.... Opens the Open Files dialog box to select a file from.
- 3. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to add/select all text files contained in the selected folder.
- 4. **Page Range Options...** Opens the Setup Pages Range dialog which allows you to specify the page(s) for adding the bates number.

<sup>p</sup> ages Range: sele	cted 209 of 209	) pages	
<u>ه االم</u>			
O Pages:		i) (tot	al <b>209</b> pages)
Subset:	All Pages	-	

- 5. To Top. Moves the selected file to the top of the list.
- 6. **Up**. Moves the selected file up in the list.
- 7. Down. Moves the selected file down in the list.
- 8. **To Bottom**. Moves the selected file to the bottom of the list.
- 9. Remove. Removes the selected file from the list.
- 10. **Output Options**. Allows you to set the appropriate output options.
  - 1. Replace file names with starting and ending Bates number (e.g. 000100-000115.pdf).
  - 2. File Name. Specifies the name of the output file. You may enter any valid file name you like. In addition, clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names.

This is especially useful for repeat jobs and to set the file numbering when single-page image files are being generated for multiple document pages.

- 1. **Destination Folder**. Selects the destination folder to receive the output files. Note that you may not simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the **Browse** button opens the **Browse** for Folder.
- 3. Overwrite Existing Files.
- 4. Open folder with results after the numeration.
- 5. Create Log File.
- 11. Options....
- 3. Remove All.... Removes all bates numbers from the document.

Remove Bates Numberings		×
Are you sure you want to remove	all existing Bates Numbering	is from the document?
	<u>Y</u> es	No

4. Manage.... Allows you to adjust bates numbers.

	.ist:		
2 01.02.2015, 12:22:51	#	Title	Add New
Remove	1	01.02.2015, 12:21:28	
	2	01.02.2015, 12:22:51	<u>E</u> dit
Remove All			Remove
	040300		Remove All

- 1. List. Displays the list of all bates numbers that were added to the document.
- 2. Add New.... Opens the Add Bates Numbering dialog box for adding new bates numbers.
- 3. Edit.... Opens the Add Bates Numbering dialog box for editing the selected bates numbers.
- 4. Remove. Removes the selected bates numbers.
- 5. Remove All. Removes all bates numbers.
- 6. Help.
- 7. Close. Closes the dialog.

## **Insert Pages**

The **Insert Pages** allows you to insert new PDF pages from another PDF document, insert empty pages, insert images, scanned pages and text to the document.



#### Insert Pages...

Insert Pages... allows you to insert pages from another PDF into the current document.

IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

Source			
O From File			
From Already	/ Opened Document		
Actions with Obje	cts		
Comments:	Flatten	-	
Form Fields:	Flatten	-	
Bookmarks:	Copy All	-	
Pages Range			
O Pages:		i	
Subset:	All Pages	-	
Destination			
Location:	After	-	
O First Page			
🔿 Last Page			
Page:	1 $\Leftrightarrow$ (total 209 pages)		

- 1. Source. Selects the source PDF for the pages to insert.
  - 1. From File. Selecting this option allows you to enter a file name.
    - 1. File. Field to enter fully-qualified path name of PDF file to select pages from.
    - 2. Browse.... Opens a standard Open File dialog box to select a PDF file to select pages from.
  - 2. From Already Opened Document. Selecting this option allows you to select one of the other PDF files already open in the Editor. The Drop list allows you to select one of the currently-open PDF files.
- 2. Actions with Objects. Determines the actions with comments, form fields and bookmarks in the process of page insertion.
  - 1. Comments. Possible choices are:
    - 1. Copy. Comments will be copied in the process of insertion.
    - 2. Flatten. Comments will be flattened in the process of insertion.
    - 3. **Do Not Copy**. Comments will not be copied in the process of insertion.
  - 2. Form Fields. Possible choices are:
    - 1. **Copy**. Form fields will be copied in the process of insertion.
    - 2. Flatten. Form fields will be flattened in the process of insertion.

- 3. Do Not Copy. Form fields will not be copied in the process of insertion.
- 3. Bookmarks. Possible choices are:
  - 1. Do Not Copy. Bookmarks will not be copied in the process of insertion.
  - 2. Copy All. All bookmarks will be copied in the process of insertion.
  - 3. Copy Related. Only related bookmarks will be copied in the process of insertion.
- 3. Pages Range. Specifies the page(s) to be inserted.
  - 1. All pages will be inserted.
  - 2. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 3. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document. Valid options are:
    - 1. All Pages. All of the specified pages are inserted.
    - 2. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only even-numbered pages will be inserted: 2, 4, 6, etc.
    - 3. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only odd-numbered pages will be inserted: 1, 3, 5, etc.
- 4. **Destination**. Specifies where in the current document to insert the selected pages.
  - 1. Location. Determines if the selected pages will be inserted Before or After the target page.
  - 2. First Page. Selects the first page as the target page.
  - 3. Last Page. Selects the last page as the target page.
  - 4. Page. Allows you to select a target page from a spin box of all possible pages.

## Insert Empty Pages...

Insert Empty Pages allows you to insert empty pages into the current document.

IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

Document (5)	05.2 × 9/1.0 mt)	
Standard:	A4 (595.3 x 841.9 pt)	
Custom:	595.3 pt 🗘 x 841.9 pt	\$ point -
Orientation:	Portrait	
Count:	1 \$	
Destination		
Location:	After	
O First Page		
🔿 Last Page		
Page:	1 \$ (total 209 page	rs)

- 1. Pages. Specifies the description of the pages to insert.
  - 1. **Document**. Selecting this option automatically specifies the size of the inserted page which will fit the document size.
  - 2. Standard. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the inserted page.
  - 3. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the inserted page.
  - 4. **Orientation**. Sets the orientation of the page.
    - 1. **Portrait**. The longer side of the page runs vertically.
    - 2. Landscape. The longer side of the page runs horizontally.
  - 5. Count. Defines the number of empty pages to be inserted.
- 2. **Destination**. Specifies where in the current document to insert empty pages.
  - 1. Location. Determines if the empty pages will be inserted Before or After the target page.
  - 2. First Page. Selects the first page as the target page.
  - 3. Last Page. Selects the last page as the target page.
  - 4. Page. Allows you to select a target page from a spin box of all possible pages.

#### Insert Images...

Insert Images... allows you to insert images into the current document.

Title		Location	Size	Modified	Info	1.0
sshot-1	Exte	G:\XChange\Image_Edi		31.07.2013, 7:21:36	1 page(s), 270 x 190 px, 24 bpp, 96 x-dpi, 96 y	1 F
sshot-2	png	G:\XChange\Image_Edi		31.07.2013, 7:22:40	1 page(s), 270 x 150 px, 24 bpp, 50 x-dpi, 50 y 1 page(s), 761 x 468 px, 24 bpp, 96 x-dpi, 96 y	
sshot-3	png	G:\XChange\Image_Edi			1 page(s), 761 x 468 px, 24 bpp, 96 x dpi, 96 y	
sshot-4	png	G:\XChange\Image_Edi		31.07.2013, 7:23:24	1 page(s), 761 x 468 px, 24 bpp, 96 x-dpi, 96 y	
sshot-5	png			31.07.2013, 7:26:02	1 page(s), 865 x 442 px, 24 bpp, 96 x-dpi, 96 y	
						1
Add Files	)	add Folder ) 📄 Im	nport	• <u>E</u> dit		-
	) 📴 A	.dd Folder 📔 🖻 Im	iport	۲) <u>E</u> dit		
Add Files Destination Location: Before	) 🕞 A		nport	)[		
Destination	) 🕞 A			e		] -

- 1. Source image files. Selects the image files to be inserted to the document.
  - 1. Add files.... Opens the **Open** dialog box to select an image file from.
  - 2. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to select an image file from.
  - 3. Import.... Opens the Scan Properties dialog.
  - 4. Edit.... Opens the Edit Image dialog box which allows you to modify the selected image.



- 1. Flip Horizontal button is used to rotate an image about a vertical axis through the center of the image.
- 2. Flip Vertical button is used to rotate an image about a horizontal axis through the center of the image.
- 3. Rotate 90 CCW button rotates the image by 90 degrees counterclockwise.
- 4. Rotate 90 CW button rotates the image by 90 degrees clockwise.
- 5. Apply Filter. Applies one of the following filters to the image.



6. Convert to. Allows you to convert the image.

1bpp Indexed
8bpp Indexed
8bpp Grayscale
Grayscale with Alpha
24bpp
32bpp

- 7. Grayscale.
- 8. Deskew.
- 9. Fit Visible button fits the image within the borders of the view pane.
- 10. Zoom In button increases the Zoom percentage of the image.
- 11. **Zoom Out** button decreases the Zoom percentage of the image.
- 5. **Up**. Moves the selected file up in the list.
- 6. Down. Moves the selected file down in the list.
- 7. Remove. Removes the selected file from the list.
- 8. The Change view mode button opens the list of views to be selected for viewing the files list.

¥	Details
	Icons
	Thumbnails

- 9. **Options...**. Defines additional settings for the new document.
- 2. **Destination**. Specifies where in the current document to insert Image files.
  - 1. Location. Determines if the Image files will be inserted Before or After the target page.
  - 2. First Page. Selects the first page as the target page.
  - 3. Last Page. Selects the last page as the target page.
  - 4. Page. Allows you to select a target page from a spin box of all possible pages.

## Insert Scanned Pages...

Insert Scanned Pages... allows you to insert scanned pages into the current document.

	kanner Settings: <custom></custom>	
Parameters		
Scanner:	Scanner is not selected	-
Data Transfer Method:	Native Mode 👻	Show Native UI
Color Mode:		
Resolution:		
Paper Size:		Setup
Source:		]
Sides:	Simple Scan 👻	]
Scan More Pages:	Ask user 👻 5 🌲	seconds
	Show Images Insertion Dialog	
	Images Insertion Options	]
Destination		
Location:	After 👻	
	<ul> <li>First Page</li> </ul>	
	Last Page     Tage	
	○ Page: 253 \$ (to	otal 253 pages)

- 1. Parameters. Sets the parameters for scanning.
  - 1. Scanner. Selects the scanner on which to scan the document.
  - 2. Data Transfer Method. Native Mode transfers in the default mode for your scanner. Memory Mode is automatically selected for scanning in resolutions over 600 dots per inch (dpi).
  - 3. Show Native UI.
  - 4. Color Mode. Allows you to choose the color mode.
  - Resolution. Sets the desired 'DPI' (Dots per inch) for the file pages. This can be any value from 50 to 2400 DPI - though this is also MS Windows OS dependent; some earlier Versions of Windows do not support DPI settings of such high values.
  - 6. Paper Size. Allows you to choose an appropriate paper size.
  - 7. Source.
  - 8. Sides. Sets the scanning side. The options are:
    - 1. Both Sides. Scans both sides of pages.
    - 2. Front Sides. Scans only front sides of pages.
  - 9. Scan More Pages. Lets you select one of the following options:
    - 1. **Disabled**. Disables the scanning of more pages.
    - 2. Ask user. When scanning is finished, you will be asked if you want to scan more pages.

- 3. Automatically after. When the scanning session is finished, the next one will start automatically.
- 10. Show Images Insertion Dialog.
- 11. **Images Insertion Options...** Allows you to adjust additional image insertion options for the scanned pages.
- 2. Destination. Specifies where in the current document to insert scanned files.
  - 1. Location. Determines if the scanned files will be inserted Before or After the target page.
  - 2. First Page. Selects the first page as the target page.
  - 3. Last Page. Selects the last page as the target page.
  - 4. Page. Allows you to select a target page from a spin box of all possible pages.

#### Insert Text...

Insert Text... allows you to insert text files into the current document.

Title	Exte	Location	Size	Modified	Info	
Note	txt	\\olesya\F\$\Samples_E	0.13 KB	4/5/2013, 2:29:14 P	Unknown (20127)	
Project	bxt	\\olesya\F\$\Samples_E	0.08 KB	4/5/2013, 1:32:19 P	Unknown (20127)	
Add files		Add Folder		<b>-</b>		À V D
Ne	w Paragraph Mod	le: Auto detect				
	Place File Mod	le: Start each file from n	ew paragrap	h		

- 1. Source text files. Selects the source PDF for the text files to insert.
  - 1. Add files.... Opens the Create New Document... dialog box to select a text file from.
  - 2. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to select a text file from.
  - 3. Up. Moves the selected file up in the list.
  - 4. **Down**. Moves the selected file down in the list.
  - 5. **Remove**. Removes the selected file from the list.
- 2. Selected File Options. Allows you to set the appropriate file options.
  - 1. Text Encoding. Allows you to choose the appropriate text encoding.
  - 2. New Paragraph Mode. Defines the placing of the new paragraphs in the PDF document. The fields are self-explanatory.
    - 1. Auto Detect.
    - 2. Each newline character starts a new paragraph.
    - 3. Double newline character starts a new paragraph, singles ignored.
    - 4. Double newline character starts a new paragraph, single converted.

- 3. Place File Mode. Allows you to choose the way each file will be placed. The fields are self-explanatory.
  - 1. Start each file from new paragraph.
  - 2. Start each file from new page.
- 3. Destination. Specifies where in the current document to insert Text files.
  - 1. Location. Determines if the Text files will be inserted **Before** or **After** the target page.
  - 2. First Page. Selects the first page as the target page.
  - 3. Last Page. Selects the last page as the target page.
  - 4. Page. Allows you to select a target page from a spin box of all possible pages.

#### Insert RTF...

Insert RTF... allows you to insert RTF files into the current document.

	Exte	Location	Size	Modified	
New Doc	rtf	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\S	0.01 KB	12/24/2012, 11:01:4	
Text Doc	rtf	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\S		12/24/2012, 11:01:0	
		Add Folder			
Add files					
estination					

1. **Source Rtf files**. Selects the source PDF for the RTF files to insert.

- 1. Add files.... Opens the Create New Document... dialog box to select the RTF file from.
- 2. Add Folder.... Opens the Browse For Folder dialog box to select the RTF file from.
- 3. **Up**. Moves the selected file up in the list.
- 4. Down. Moves the selected file down in the list.
- 5. **Remove**. Removes the selected file from the list.
- 2. Destination. Specifies where in the current document to insert RTF files.
  - 1. Location. Determines if the RTF files will be inserted Before or After the target page.
  - 2. First Page. Selects the first page as the target page.
  - 3. Last Page. Selects the last page as the target page.
  - 4. Page. Allows you to select a target page from a spin box of all possible pages.

# **Extract Pages**

Extract Pages allows you to extract selected pages from the current PDF to one or more PDF files.

IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

	ected 1 of 209 pages		
	<ul> <li>Selected</li> </ul>	Pages 📋	
Current Pag	e		
O Pages:		i	(total 209 pages)
Subset:	All Pages	-	
Actions with Obj	ects		
Comments:	Сору	-	
Form Fields:		-	
Bookmarks:		-	
	Delete Pages After Extraction	1	
Output Options			
Type:	View New Document After Crea	ation 👻	
File Name:			
%[FileName]_%	[Page		
Destination Fold	len		
C:\Users\admir	\Documents\		
Topen the De	stination Folder with Result Files		

- 1. Pages Range. Allows you to select the page(s) for extraction.
  - 1. All pages will be extracted.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Only pages selected in the Thumbnail display in the currently displayed PDF document will be extracted.
  - 3. Current Page. Only the current page will be extracted.
  - Pages. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
    - 1. All Pages. All of the specified pages will be extracted.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only odd-numbered pages will be extracted: 1, 3, 5, etc.
    - 3. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only even-numbered pages will be extracted: 2, 4, 6, etc.

- 2. Actions with Objects. Determines the actions with comments, form fields and bookmarks in the process of page extraction.
  - 1. **Comments**. Possible choices are:
    - 1. **Copy**. Comments will be copied in the process of extraction.
    - 2. Flatten. Comments will be flattened in the process of extraction.
    - 3. **Do Not Copy**. Comments will not be copied in the process of extraction.
  - 2. Form Fields. Possible choices are:
    - 1. Copy. Form fields will be copied in the process of extraction.
    - 2. Flatten. Form fields will be flattened in the process of extraction.
    - 3. **Do Not Copy**. Form fields will not be copied in the process of extraction.
  - 3. Bookmarks. Possible choices are:
    - 1. Do Not Copy. Bookmarks will not be copied in the process of extraction.
    - 2. Copy All. All bookmarks will be copied in the process of extraction.
    - 3. Copy Related. Only related bookmarks will be copied in the process of extraction.
  - 4. **Delete Pages After Extraction**. The selected pages will be deleted from the current document after they are extracted.

Use with care.

- 3. Output Options. Specifies handling of pages.
  - 1. **Type**. Defines the output type of the extraction.
    - View New Document After Creation. The pages will be extracted to a new tab in the Editor. NO file is created at this time! The new tab has an asterisk next to an assigned file name. To save the extracted pages, use the File | Save As menu option to assign a folder and file name to the extracted pages.
    - 2. Save all extracted pages to one document. The pages will be extracted to separate file named and located according to the File Name and Destination Folder fields.
      - File Name. Specifies a macro-based file name to use for the created file(s). The default value is <File Name>-<Page Number> which specifies that the files will use the name of the current document from which the pages are being extracted, and appends a dash followed by the page number of the page within the original document. This macro should always contain the <Page Number> macro for creating multiple unique files.
         Macros. Clicking this button will open a menu of possible file naming macros to simplify building unique file names based on a number of criteria. The fields are self-explanatory.



- 2. **Destination Folder**. Specifies the fully-qualified name of the folder to receive the new single-page PDF files.
- 3. **Browse...** Opens a standard Save Folder Dialog. This dialog allows you to select an existing folder or create a new one as needed.
- 4. **Open the Destination Folder with Result Files**. If checked, a folder with the extracted files will be opened after extraction.
- 3. Save each page to separate document. Each page will be extracted to separate file named and located according to the File Name and Destination Folder fields.
- 4. Save each page range to separate document. Each page range will be extracted to separate file named and located according to the File Name and Destination Folder fields.

## Replace Pages...

Replace Pages allows you to replace the selected PDF pages with different PDF pages.

Pages to Replace				
Pages from:	1	🗘 to: 1	 \$	
New Pages From				
O From File				
From Already O	pened Documer	nt		
Pages Range				
O Pages:			i	
Subset:	All Pages		 -	
Actions with Object	ts			
Comments:	Flatten		-	
Form Fields:	Flatten		-	
Bookmarks:	Copy All		-	
Constanting the second second				

1. Pages to Replace. Allows you to specify the range of pages that will be replaced.

- 2. New Pages From. Selects the source PDF that will replace the content in your open document.
  - 1. **From File**. Selecting this option allows you to enter a file name.
    - 1. File. Field to enter fully-qualified path name of PDF file to select pages from.
    - 2. Browse.... Opens a standard Open File dialog box to select a PDF file to select pages from.
  - 2. From Already Opened Document. Selecting this option allows you to select one of the other PDF files already open in the Editor. The Drop list allows you to select one of the currently-open PDF files.
  - 3. Pages Range. Specifies the page(s) that will replace the pages in the original document.
    - 1. All pages will replace the selected pages in the original document.
    - 2. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
    - 3. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
      - 1. All Pages. All of the specified pages will replace the selected pages in the original document.
      - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only odd-numbered pages will replace the selected pages in the original document: 1, 3, 5, etc.

- 3. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only even-numbered pages will replace the selected pages in the original document: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 4. Actions with Objects. Determines the actions with comments, form fields and bookmarks in the process of page replacement.
  - 1. Comments. Possible choices are:
    - 1. **Copy**. Comments will be copied in the process of replacement.
    - 2. Flatten. Comments will be flattened in the process of replacement.
    - 3. Do Not Copy. Comments will not be copied in the process of replacement.
  - 2. Form Fields. Possible choices are:
    - 1. Copy. Form fields will be copied in the process of replacement.
    - 2. Flatten. Form fields will be flattened in the process of replacement.
    - 3. Do Not Copy. Form fields will not be copied in the process of replacement.
  - 3. Bookmarks. Possible choices are:
    - 1. Do Not Copy. Bookmarks will not be copied in the process of replacement.
    - 2. Copy All. All bookmarks will be copied in the process of replacement.
    - 3. Copy Related. Only related bookmarks will be copied in the process of replacement.

## **Delete Pages**

Delete Pages allows you to select pages to be deleted from the active PDF.

IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

Selected Pages			
Cu <u>r</u> rent Page	-		
Pages:		(total 209	pages)
Subset:	All Pages		

- 1. Pages Range. There are three ways that page(s) may be selected for deletion:
  - 1. Selected Pages. If you select one or more pages in the Thumbnails display, this option will be available. Clicking OK will cause those selected pages to be removed.
  - 2. Current Page. Selecting this option will cause the current page of the active document to be deleted.
  - 3. **Pages**. This option allows you to enter Pages Range. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1.

Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5.

Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.

- 1. Subset. When Pages is selected, this drop box becomes active. The valid values are:
  - 1. All Pages. All pages in the specified range will be removed.
  - 2. Odd Pages Only. Only ODD numbered pages will be removed. If you specify a range of "1-5", only pages 1, 3, and 5 will be removed.
  - 3. **Even Pages Only**. Only EVEN numbered pages will be removed. If you specify a range of "1-5", only pages 2 and 4 will be removed.

## **Crop Pages**

Crop Pages allows you to crop the active document's pages based on setting Margins for the individual boxes.

This is most often necessary if the PDF is being used to transmit information for printing or faxing and user control over the information display must be maintained.

	<b>IMPORTANT!</b> This is a PRO feature	. see	IMPORTANT!	FREE vs.	PRO	version	for more information.
--	---	-------	------------	----------	-----	---------	-----------------------

rop Margins	Preview Page: 1
Show All Boxes	
Box: Crop Box 👻	
Margin Control	
Left: 0 mm 💠 Right: 0 mm 💠	<i>f</i> itracker
Top: 0 mm $\Leftrightarrow$ Bottom: 0 mm $\diamondsuit$	PDF-XChange Editor v3.x
	User Manual
	Read Equations These Informations of Associations (in a, Yea Ing (A), SEO Experiment Associations of Associations of Associations
Constrain Proportions	Banga Garang Kanang Tan Canang Symty Jaka Dan Sala. Kan Canang Symty Jaka Dan Sala.
Set To Zero Revert To Original Set To White Margins	h house
	Crawer Same Sector
ages Range: selected 253 of 253 pages	tage investment address ten
	Crastel Stanley, Nanov 19, 2014 Copyright 0, 2020 XXV1 Stanley Telefanan Hundan, 20 Regins Pleasenet.
<ul> <li><u>A</u>II</li> </ul>	
Selected Pages 👔	
Cu <u>r</u> rent Page	
Pages: [] (total 253 pages)	
Subset: All Pages	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 4 5 6 5
Remove the content outside of the crop box area	Cropped page size: 215.9 x 279.4 mm
nemove the content outside of the crop box area	

#### 1. Crop Margins.

1. Show All Boxes. Irrespective of the box selected by the Box drop box, all boxes are displayed as rectangles using their assigned colors:

BOX NAME	COLOR
Crop Box	Black
Bleed Box	Blue
Trim Box	Green
Art Box	Red

- 2. Box. Selects which box to display and adjust margins. Possible choices are:
  - 1. Crop Box. A rectangle, expressed in default user space units, defining the visible region of default user space.

When the page is displayed or printed, its contents are to be clipped (cropped) to this rectangle and then imposed on the output medium in some implementation-defined manner.

- Bleed Box. A rectangle, expressed in default user space units, defining the region to which the contents of the page should be clipped when output in a production environment. Default value: the value of Crop Box.
- 3. **Trim Box**. A rectangle, expressed in default user space units, defining the intended dimensions of the finished page after trimming.

Default value: the value of **Crop Box**.

4. Art Box. A rectangle, expressed in default user space units, defining the extent of the page's meaningful content (including potential white space) as intended by the page's creator. Default value: the value of Crop Box. For a further discussion, refer to PDF Reference sixth edition, Adobe® Portable Document Format

For a further discussion, refer to PDF Reference sixth edition, Adobe® Portable Document Format Version 1.7, Section 10.10.1, "Page Boundaries".

3. **Margin Control**. Margin control adjust the size of the selected box by setting non-zero margins using the selected "user units."

The adjustments are:

- 1. Left. The left margin is moved to the right by the amount specified in Units.
- 2. Right. The right margin is moved to the left by the amount specified in Units.
- 3. Top. The top margin is moved down by the amount specified in Units.
- 4. Bottom. The bottom margin is moved up by the amount specified in Units.
- 5. **Units**. The units of measure to use for the margin movements. Valid values are: Centimeters, Inches, Millimeters, Picas, and Points.
- 6. **Constrain Proportions**. When adjusting margin values, adjusting one margin will adjust all settings by an equal amount.
- 7. Set To Zero. When clicked, all margin settings are set to zero.
- 8. **Revert To Original**. When clicked, all margins settings are restored to their original values before adjustments were made.
- 9. Set To White Margins. When clicked, the margins will be set to bind the smallest area that includes all of the page information.
- 2. **Pages Range**. This selects the page(s) to be cropped. Valid options are:
  - 1. All pages will be cropped.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Only selected pages will be cropped.
  - 3. Current Page. Only the current page will be cropped.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page range may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
    - 1. All pages. All of the specified pages will be cropped.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only odd-numbered pages will be cropped: 1, 3, 5, etc.
    - 3. **Even Pages Only**. Within the specified Pages Range only even-numbered pages will be cropped: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 3. **Remove the content outside of the crop box area**. If there is any content outside the crop box area, it will be removed after cropping the pages.
- 4. **Remove White Spaces**. Automatically sets the cropping margins so that the white margins of the page are cropped.
# Crop Page Tool

Crop Page Tool allows you to adjust the visible page area.

When selected, drag a rectangle on the page you want to crop. When you finish dragging, the Crop Pages Dialog will appear for further page boxes adjustment. Pressing Cancel will close the dialog and will allow you to further modify the Crop Page Tool rectangle. Pressing Escape or choosing another tool will clear the current Crop Page Tool editing area.

Crop Margins		Preview Page: 6
Show All Bo		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Crop Box 👻	Reserved Text 200 Dear (Dealy Text 200 Projection Text 200
Margin Control		Page Tar 20 Carl Tar 20 Page Tar 20 Page Tar 20 Page Tar 20
Left:	12,4 mm 🗘 Right: 17,2 mm 🗘	Res Not
Top:	18,8 mm 🗘 Bottom: 81,8 mm 🗘	Present Tail 207 An Tair 209 Las Tair 202 Las traitean Tail 202 Las traitean Tail 202
Units:	millimeter 🔻	Professore 200 New 202 Dispers 1. Tradium Ana 224
Constrain P	roportions	Nami Natar 200 Full Indian 201 Restart Finder 201 Tagan har Indian 201
Set To Zero	Revert To Original Set To White Margins	Zana Talaka 228 Bali Camar 228 Camara Sa Mula Yanda 228 Manang Yana 239
Jerrozero		Chapter T. Varigation Eur. 242 Chapter E. Berl Latences 244
Pages Range: selec	ted 1 of 253 pages	26 Dupor 1: State
	ted 1 of 253 pages	and the second se
Pages Range: selec		and the second se
	ges 🚹	and the second se
○ <u>A</u> II ○ <u>S</u> elected Pa	ges 🚹	and the second se
All     Selected Pa     Current Page     Pages:	ges 🚹	and the second se

For more information, see Crop Pages.

### Resize Pages...

Resize Pages allows you to resize the selected PDF pages.

Standard:	A4 (210 x 297 mm)		-	Portrait	-
Custom:	215,9 mm 💲 ×		mm \$	millimeter	+
Placement					
<u>H</u> orizont	al Offset: 0 mm	\$	from:	Center	-
<u>V</u> ertic	al Offset: 0 mm	\$	from:	Center	-
<u>A</u> II <u>S</u> elected Pa     Current Page					
O Pages:	: All Pages	1		253 pages)	

- 1. Paper Size. Specifies the size for pages resizing.
  - 1. **Standard**. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the resized page. You can also choose either Portrait or Landscape orientation of the page from the second drop box.
  - 2. Custom. Selecting this option allows you to specify the size of the resized page.
- 2. Placement. The placement fields allows you to define the position of a resized area on a PDF page.
  - 1. **Horizontal Offset**. Once you have positioned the resized area to one of the 9 starting positions, you may "tune" the position by applying horizontal offset values to the resized area.
  - 2. Vertical Offset. Once you have positioned the resized area to one of the 9 starting positions, you may "tune" the position by applying vertical offset values to the resized area.
  - 3. **Positions**. Selecting one option from each of these buttons will position the resized area to one of 9 starting positions on the page.
- 3. Pages Range. Allows you to select the page(s) for resizing.
  - 1. All. Resizes all pages in the currently displayed PDF document.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Resizes pages selected in the Thumbnail display in the currently displayed PDF document.
  - 3. **Current Page**. Resizes the current page of the currently displayed PDF document.
  - 4. **Pages**. This option allows you to enter Pages Range. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 5. Subset. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document.
    - 1. All Pages. All pages in the specified range(s) will be resized.
    - 2. Odd Pages Only. Only ODD numbered pages will be resized. If you specify a range of "1-5", only pages 1, 3, and 5 will be resized.
    - 3. Even Pages Only. Only EVEN numbered pages will be resized. If you specify a range of "1-5", only pages 2 and 4 will be resized.
- 4. Content Transforming Options.
  - 1. Transform content together with selected pages.
    - 1. Constraint the aspect ratio of the content.

#### **Rotate Pages**

Rotate Pages allows you to rotate pages with more control than the simple toolbar controls.

Direction:	Clockwise 90 degrees	~	
ges Range: select	ed 1 of 209 pages		
) <u>A</u> II			
Selected Pages			
Cu <u>r</u> rent Page			
) Pages:	[	i	(total 209 pages)
Subset:	All Pages	*	
	Pages of Any Orientation	+	

1. Direction. Determines how to rotate the pages. There are three options:

- 1. Clockwise 90 degrees.
- 2. Counterclockwise 90 degrees.
- 3. 180 degrees.
- 2. Pages Range. Allows you to select the page(s) for rotation.
  - 1. All. Rotates all pages in the currently displayed PDF document.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Rotates pages selected in the Thumbnail display in the currently displayed PDF document.
  - 3. Current Page. Rotates the current page of the currently displayed PDF document.
  - 4. Pages. This option allows you to enter Pages Range. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.
  - 5. Subset. Specifies what pages are to be rotated.
    - 1. The first drop box selects pages based on odd or even numbering within the Pages Range.
      - 1. All Pages. All pages in the specified range(s) will be rotated.
      - 2. Odd Pages Only. Only ODD numbered pages will be rotated. If you specify a range of "1-5", only pages 1, 3, and 5 will be rotated.
      - 3. Even Pages Only. Only EVEN numbered pages will be rotated. If you specify a range of "1-5", only pages 2 and 4 will be rotated.
    - 2. The second drop box selects pages based on current orientation Portrait or Landscape within the Pages Range.
      - 1. Pages of Any Orientation. All pages will be rotated.
      - 2. Portrait Pages. Only pages with portrait orientation will be rotated.
      - 3. Landscape Pages. Only pages with landscape orientation will be rotated.

## OCR Pages...

When there is no current page selection, the "Selected Pages" option will be unavailable.

If the current output type is set to "Create New Searchable PDF" a new document containing only the pages from the selection will be created. **OCR Pages...** recognizes the text of the previously scanned PDF document to make the scanned text searchable and selectable.

Selecting this menu option opens the OCR Pages dialog:

Pages Range: selected 28	J of 265 pages			
All     Current Days				
<ul> <li>Current Page</li> <li>Selected Pages 1</li> </ul>				
Pages:		<b>i</b> (	total 285 pa	anec)
			total 203 p	iges)
Subset:	All Pages	-		
Recognition				
Primary Language		-	More	Languages
Accuracy	Medium	-		
	Auto Deskew			
Output				
Output Type	Preserve Original Content ar	nd Add Te	ext Layer	-
Quality	300	-		

In addition to selecting pages for OCR, this dialog allows you to temporarily change the OCR settings for the current task, if you wish, without saving them for next time. The options available under **Recognition** and **Output** are the same as those found in the preferences. Please see the documentation for **Edit** | **Preferences** | **OCR** for details. You must use the preferences page if you want to save your settings for the future.

- 1. Pages Range. This group allows pages or page ranges to be selected for OCR.
  - 1. All. Selects all document pages for OCR.
  - 2. Current Page. OCR only the current page.
  - 3. Selected Pages. Select pages with the "Thumbnails" view: see View | Thumbnails for details.
  - 4. Pages. Allows a range to be typed into the range box. The format for page range specification should be familiar, with commas separating ranges, and ranges specified with hyphens. For example, 1-3,5,9 selects pages 1 to 3, then page 5, and finally page 9. A hyphen at the start or end of the selection indicates the minimum or maximum. For example, you could write 7- to select all pages from 7 to the end of the document.
  - 5. Subset. Specifies a filter to apply to the main selection. Choices are Odd, Even and AII.

When there is no current page selection, the "Selected Pages" option will be unavailable.

If the current output type is set to "Create New Searchable PDF" a new document containing only the pages from the selection will be created.

- 2. **Recognition**. Specifies the settings for recognizing the text.
  - 1. **Primary Language**. Specifies the language which will be used for identifying the characters.
  - 2. More Languages.... Allows you to select other languages.
  - 3. Accuracy. Allows you to choose the quality of recognizing text.
  - 4. Auto Deskew. Automatically rotates a scanned image or text in order to align them if they have been slanted.
- 3. **Output**. Specifies the output settings.
  - 1. Output Type. Allows you to select one of the following output types for a PDF document.
    - Create New Searchable PDF. Creates a searchable PDF document with the recognized text.
       Preserve Original Content and Add Text Layer. Creates a new document with the original
    - text as a background, which is overlayed with the other document with the recognized text.
  - 2. **Quality**. Determines the resolution of the new PDF document.

## Signing

A PDF document can be signed to indicate your approval. When you sign a document, your digital signature appears in the signature field. The appearance of the signature can be changed according to the selected options.



1. **Sign Document...** Allows you to choose the place where the Digital Signature will be put. When the place is chosen, the following dialog box appears.

Sign Document				×
1. Select Certificate (Digital ID):				
Use Certificate from	m System Store:			
Issued To:				Browse
Use Certificate from	m File:			
File Name:				Browse
		View Certificat	te Crea	ate Certificate
2. Setup Details and Appearance for S	ign:			
Reason for Signing:	<none></none>			-
Location:				
Contact Info:				
Permissions:	Don't lock docku	ment after signing		-
Sign Template:	Default			Manage
		Digitally si	qned by <sa< th=""><th>mple</th></sa<>	mple
		Name>		
<sam Nam</sam 	ne	DN: cn= <s< th=""><th>Sample Nam</th><th>e&gt;,</th></s<>	Sample Nam	e>,
Udin	<b>P</b> ' <b>V</b>	o= <organi< th=""><th>y Name&gt;,</th><th>&gt;</th></organi<>	y Name>,	>
		ou= <organ< th=""><th>nization Unit</th><th>Name&gt;,</th></organ<>	nization Unit	Name>,
Nam		email= <sa< th=""><th>mple@mail.</th><th>com&gt;</th></sa<>	mple@mail.	com>
I IMIII				1818
** You may cha	nge the appearanc	AND THE OWNER AND THE OWNER OF THE OWNER OF THE OWNER OWNE	3.04.05 14:42	1:39 +03'00' n the preview above.
	URL:	e en the digital sign i	y addite chealing o	
Use Timestamp Server:	UKL:			Change
			<u>о</u> к	Cancel
			CONCISION DE LA CONCERCICIÓN DE LA CONCERCIÓN DE LA CONCERC	

- 1. Select Certificate (Digital ID).
  - 1. Use Certificate from System Store. Allows you to choose the digital ID from the system store.
  - 2. Use Certificate from File. Allows you to choose the digital ID from file.

- 3. View Certificate.... Allows you to see the details of the certificate.
- 4. Create Certificate.... Allows you to create a new certificate.
- 2. Setup Details and Appearance for Sign.
  - 1. Reason for Signing. Allows you to choose a reason for signing the document.
  - 2. Location. Allows you to type your location information.
  - 3. Contact Info. Allows you to type your contact information.
  - 4. Permissions. Opens a drop-list of permissions to choose.
  - 5. **Sign Template**. Allows you to choose the sign template.
- 3. Use Timestamp Server. If checked, the time stamp server will be used.
- 2. Place Signature.... If you haven't specified a digital ID, you're prompted to find or create one.
- 3. Certify (Visible).... Creating a visible signature will put a visible sign on the PDF page when the document is printed.

Certify Document		×				
1. Select Certificate (Digital ID):						
Use Certificate from	m System Store:					
Issued To:		Browse				
Use Certificate from	m File:					
File Name:		Browse				
	View Certificat	te Create Certificate				
2. Setup Details and Appearance for S	ign:					
Reason for Signing:	<none></none>	-				
Location:						
Contact Info:						
Permissions:	Permissions: No changes allowed					
Sign Template:	Default	- Manage				
Nam	PIC Name> DN: cn= <s c=<countr o=<organi ou=<organi email=<sa Reason: &lt; Date: 2013</sa </organi </organi </countr </s 	nization Name>, nization Unit Name>, mple@mail.com>				
Use Timestamp Server:	URL:	Change				

4. **Certify (Invisible)...** An invisible signature shows no visible characteristics of signing the PDF document. It is necessary when you do not want to change the PDF content as a result of the signing process.

O Has Cartificate from				
Use Certificate from     Issued To:	m system store	s	-	Browse
Use Certificate from	m File:		(	browse
File Name:				Browse
		View Certificate	Crea	te Certificate
Reason for Signing: Location:	<none></none>			
Contact Info: Permissions:	No changes al	llowed		
Use Timestamp Server:	URL:		Million and another	Change.

5. Timestamp.... Allows you to add the date and time of signing the document as part of your signature.

	िक Timestar	mp Server: <c< th=""><th>ustom&gt;</th><th>-</th></c<>	ustom>	-
Server Settings:				
Server URL:				
Server Requires	Authentificat	ion		
User Name:			]	
Password:			]	

- 1. Server Settings. Specifies the server settings.
  - 1. Server URL. The URL of the new time stamp server.
  - 2. Server Requires Authentication. If checked, the server will require authentication.
  - 3. User Name. User name required for authentication.
  - 4. **Password**. Password required for authentication.
- 6. Validate All Signatures.... Allows you to validate all digital signatures.
- 7. Clear All Signatures.... Allows you to clear all digital signatures.

### Redaction

**Redaction** allows you to permanently hide the selected text or images. The visible content is substituted by colored boxes or a blank area.



- 1. Mark for Redaction. This tool is used to mark the text or images, which are to be hidden.
- 2. **Apply All Redactions**. Finishes the process of redaction after all necessary items have been selected. You are able to edit the appearance of the redaction boxes in the Properties toolbar.

<ol> <li>The Thumbnails &amp; The Thumbnails area allows you to quickly find</li> <li>The Main PDE Page Display Area is where the actual PDE content pages are displayed.</li> </ol>	1)	The PDF document tab(s) permit quickly switching between loaded PDF files.
3) The Main PDF Page Display Area is where the actual PDF content pages are displayed	2)	The Thumbnails & area allows you to quickly find
of the main of tage pipping fired is there are decident of content pages are displayed.	3)	The Main PDF Page Display Area is where the actual PDF content pages are displayed.

You may change the properties of the text with the help of the **Properties Toolbar** which appears at the Toolbar area when the Redaction is made:



## Comments

The Comments menu allows you to Flatten, Summarize, Import, Export Comments to Data File and view Comments List and Styles Palette.



Flatten Comments Summarize Comments Import Comments Export Comments to Data File Show Comments Show Comments List Comment Styles Palette

### Flatten Comments

Flatten Comments... flattens the annotations in case you want to make it impossible to change them.

This is a one way operation and cannot be reversed, so save a copy prior to doing this if you still wish to have your annotations editable yourself.

Flattening comments as well removes clickable hyperlinks, and flattens fillable PDF form fields to selectable text.

#### IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

		O Selec	cted Pages	i	
Current Page					
🔵 Pages:				i	(total 209 pages)
Subset:	All Pages			-	
ptions					
Non-Printable:	Flatten			-	
Form Fields:	Left As Is			Ţ	

- 1. Pages Range. Allows you to select the page(s) with the comments for flattening.
  - 1. All pages with the comments will be flattened.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Only selected pages will be flattened.
  - 3. Current Page. Only the current page with the comments will be flattened.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5.

Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.

5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document.

Valid values are:

- 1. All Pages. All of the specified pages with the comments will be flattened.
- 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only odd-numbered pages will be flattened: 1, 3, 5, etc.
- 3. **Even Pages Only**. Within the specified Pages Range only even-numbered pages will be flattened: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 2. **Options**. Valid options are:
  - 1. Non-Printable. Defines a certain action for non-printable comments.
    - 1. Flatten. Non-Printable comments will be flattened.

- 2. Left As Is. Non-Printable comments will be left as they are.
- 3. **Remove**. Non-Printable comments will be removed.
- 2. Form Fields. Defines a certain action for form fields.
  - 1. Flatten. Form fields will be flattened.
  - 2. Left As Is. Form fields will be left as they are.
  - 3. **Remove**. Form fields will be removed.

#### Summarize Comments

**Summarize Comments...** allows you to get a summary of all the comments associated with a PDF to view them as a new PDF Document, Rich Text Format, Plain Text or HTML Page.

IMPORTANT! This is a PRO feature, see IMPORTANT! FREE vs. PRO version for more information.

	-		
Group by:		Exclude replies	
Sort by:	Page	Include invisib	le comments
ages Range: select	ed <b>1</b> of <b>209</b> pages		
	○ Selected Pages 1		
• Cu <u>r</u> rent Page			
O Pages:	[	(total 209 pages)	
Subset:	All Pages	-	
Dutput			
Type:	PDF Documents (*.pdf)	•	
Options			
Paper:	A4 (595.3 x 841.9 pt)	-	
Layout:	Comments only	_	-
	Place each group on separate page		
	Destination Folder:		
	C:\Users\root\Documents\		
IT I	File Name:		
	%[FileName]_%[AutoNumber]		

1. General. Allows you to set the general options for summarizing comments.

- 1. Group by. Defines the parameters by which the comments can be grouped. Valid values are:
  - 1. **Page**. The comments are grouped by page.
  - 2. **Type**. The comments are grouped by type.
  - 3. Author. The comments are grouped by author.
  - 4. Date. The comments are grouped by date.
  - 5. **Subject**. The comments are grouped by subject.
- 2. Sort by. Defines the parameters by which the comments can be sorted within a group. Valid values are:
  - 1. **Page**. The comments are sorted by page.

- 2. Type. The comments are sorted by type.
- 3. Author. The comments are sorted by author.
- 4. Date. The comments are sorted by date.
- 5. **Subject**. The comments are sorted by subject.
- 3. Exclude replies. When specified, the replies to the comments are not included into the summary.
- 4. Include invisible comments. When specified, the invisible comments are included into the summary.
- 2. Pages Range. Allows you to select the page(s) with the comments to be summarized.
  - 1. All pages with the comments will be summarized.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Only selected pages with the comments will be summarized.
  - 3. Current Page. Only the current page with the comments will be summarized.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1.

Sequential page ranges may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5.

Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.

- 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Page Ranges to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
  - 1. All pages. All of the specified pages with the comments will be summarized.
  - 2. Odd pages. Within the specified Page Range(s) only odd-numbered pages with the comments will be summarized: 1, 3, 5, etc.
  - 3. Even pages. Within the specified Page Range(s) only even-numbered pages with the comments will be summarized: 2, 4, 6, etc.
- 3. **Output**. Depending on the type of the comment summary output, the paper and layout options are changed correspondingly.
  - 1. **Type**. PDF Document (\*.pdf)

utput			
Туре:	PDF Documents (*.pdf)	-	
Options			
Paper:	A4 (595.3 x 841.9 pt)		
Layout:	Comments only		-
	Place each group on separate	page	
	Destination Folder:		
	C:\Users\root\Documents\		
IT I	File Name:		
	%[FileName]_%[AutoNumber]		[.] -

- 1. **Options**. Valid options are:
  - 1. **Paper**. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
  - 2. Layout. Determines how pages are arranged in the PDF document pane.
  - 3. Place each group on separate page. Allows you to place each group of summarized comments on separate pages.
  - Destination Folder. Selects the destination folder to receive the comments. Note that you may not simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the Browse button opens the Browse for Folder dialog to select the destination folder.
  - 5. **File Name**. Specifies the name of the export file. You may enter any valid file name you like.

In addition, clicking the Macros button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can

use to automatically generate file names.

This is especially useful for repeat jobs and to set the file numbering when single-page image files are being generated for multiple document pages.

2. Type. Rich Text Format (\*.rtf)

utput			
Туре:	Rich Text Format (*.rtf)	-	
Options			
Paper:	A4 (595.3 x 841.9 pt)	-	
	Place each group on separate page		
	Destination Folder:		
	C:\Users\root\Documents\		
	File Name:		
	%[FileName]_%[AutoNumber]		[[.] -]

- 1. **Options**. Valid options are:
  - 1. Paper. Selecting this option allows you to choose the standard size of the page.
  - 2. Place each group on separate page. Allows you to place each group of summarized comments on separate pages.
  - Destination Folder. Selects the destination folder to receive the comments. Note that you may not simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the Browse button opens the Browse for Folder dialog to select the destination folder.
  - 4. **File Name**. Specifies the name of the export file. You may enter any valid file name you like.

In addition, clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names.

This is especially useful for repeat jobs and to set the file numbering when single-page image files are being generated for multiple document pages.

3. Type. Plain Text (\*.txt)

output			
т	ype: Plain Text (*.txt)	-	
Options			
	Text Encoding:		
	Unicode		
	Destination Folder:		
	C:\Users\root\Documents\		
	File Name:		
- Anna	%[FileName]_%[AutoNumber]		[.] -

- 1. **Options**. Valid options are:
  - 1. Text Encoding. Allows you to choose the appropriate text encoding.
  - Destination Folder. Selects the destination folder to receive the comments. Note that you may not simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the Browse button opens the Browse for Folder dialog to select the destination folder.
  - 3. File Name. Specifies the name of the export file. You may enter any valid file name you like.

In addition, clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names.

This is especially useful for repeat jobs and to set the file numbering when single-page image files are being generated for multiple document pages.

4. Type. HTML Files (\*.html)

1	ype: HTML Files (*.html)	
ptions		
	Destination Folder:	
	C:\Users\root\Documents\	
	File Name:	
	%[FileName]_%[AutoNumber]	[.] -

- 1. **Options**. Valid options are:
  - Destination Folder. Selects the destination folder to receive the comments. Note that you may not simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the Browse button opens the Browse for Folder dialog to select the destination folder.

2. File Name. Specifies the name of the export file. You may enter any valid file name you like.

In addition, clicking the **Macros** button opens a submenu of file name macros that you can use to automatically generate file names.

This is especially useful for repeat jobs and to set the file numbering when single-page image files are being generated for multiple document pages.

4. View New Document after Creation. Allows you to view the document after summarizing comments.

### Import Comments

**Comments** can be imported from a PDF document. You can also import comments from a Form Data Format (FDF) file or an XFDF file, which is an XML-based FDF file.

From PDF Reference 1.7:

#### 8.6.6 Forms Data Format

Forms Data Format (FDF) is the file format used for interactive form data (PDF 1.2). FDF is used when submitting form data to a server, receiving the response, and incorporating it into the interactive form. It can also be used to export form data to stand-alone files that can be stored, transmitted electronically, and imported back into the corresponding PDF interactive form.

Please refer to PDF Reference 1.7, available as a free download from http://www.adobe.com/.

The comment positioning matches that of the file from which they were imported. If comments appear out of place, the source and recipient PDF documents are likely different. For example, if you import comments from a ten-page document to a two-page document, only comments from the first two pages appear.

## Export Comments to Data File

rganize 🔻 🛛 New folde	r	ie 🔹	0
J Music	Name	Date modified	Туре
Pictures	🔒 Diff	12/24/2012 10:53	File folder
H Videos	Image_Editor	12/24/2012 2:44 PM	File folder
	길 Images_Lite	4/10/2012 5:35 PM	File folder
Computer	Images_Standard	4/10/2012 10:03 AM	File folder
Local Disk (C:)	📕 Ms	12/24/2012 10:53	File folder
Data (D:) Development (E:)	Discopy_12_03_2012	3/12/2012 11:55 AM	File folder
🚽 f\$ (\\olesya) (O:)			
-	<		•
File <u>n</u> ame: PDFVN	Manual		•
Save as type: XFDF F	iles (*.xfdf)		-
~.			

Export Comments to Data File... allows you to export comments in order to publish or send them to someone.

## Show Comments

Show Comments defines which comments will be displayed in the document.

Show All Comments	Ctrl+8
Hide All Comments	Ctrl+Shift+8
Ву Туре	•
By Author	•
Checked	Þ
By Status	•
Open All Pop-ups	
Close All Pop-ups	

- 1. Show All Comments. Displays all comments in the document.
- 2. Hide All Comments. Hides all comments in the document.
- 3. By Type. Displays comments by type.
- 4. **By Author**. Displays comments by author.
- 5. Checked. Displays comments which are marked or unmarked in the Comments List.
- 6. By Status. Displays comments by status.
- 7. Open All Pop-ups. Opens all pop-up notes.
- 8. Close All Pop-ups. Closes all pop-up notes.

#### Show Comments List

Show Comments List opens a scrollable list of all comments above the PDF Display Area, in the "Other Panes" area:



As you select different comments, the PDF Display will reposition to the correct place in the document.

1. **Options**. Determines the options of the comments.

Expand All	
Collapse All	
✔ 🚰 Group By Page	
Group By Type	
Group By Modification D	ate
Group By Creation Date	
Croup By Author	
Group By Color	
Group By Subject	
✓ Show Subjects	
✓ Show Authors	
✓ Show Dates	
✓ Show Text	
✓ Show Statuses	
Show Colors	
Show Comments	•
✓ Show Comments with Hidde	n Flag

1. Expand All. Allows you to expand all groups of comments in the list.

- 2. Collapse All. Allows you to contract all groups of comments in the list.
- 3. Group By Page. Groups comments by page.
- 4. Group By Type. Groups comments by type.
- 5. Group By Modification Date. Groups comments by modification date.
- 6. Group By Creation Date. Groups comments by creation date.
- 7. Group By Author. Groups comments by author.
- 8. Group By Color. Groups comments by color.
- 9. Group By Subject. Groups comments by subject.
- 10. Show Subjects. Shows subjects of all comments.
- 11. Show Authors. Shows authors of all comments.
- 12. Show Dates. Shows dates of all comments.
- 13. Show Text. Shows text of all comments.
- 14. Show Statuses. Shows statuses of all comments.
- 15. Show Colors. Shows colors of all comments.
- 16. Show Comments. Defines which comments will be displayed in the document.
  - 1. Show All Comments. Displays all comments in the document.
  - 2. Hide All Comments. Hides all comments in the document.
  - 3. By Type. Displays comments by type.
  - 4. By Author. Displays comments by author.
  - 5. Checked. Displays comments which are marked or unmarked in the Comments List.
  - 6. By Status. Displays comments by status.
  - 7. Open All Pop-ups. Opens all pop-up notes.
  - 8. Close All Pop-ups. Closes all pop-up notes.

#### 17. Show Comments with the Hidden Flag.

The toolbar at the top allows you to do several things:

- 1. Next Comment and Previous Comment allow you to scroll up and down the list of comments.
- 2. Add Reply allows you to generate a reply to the selected comment.
- 3. Summarize Comments... allows you to summarize comments.
- 4. Delete deletes the selected comment, or the selected comments Group.
- 5. Properties opens comment properties pane.

## Comment Styles Palette

Comments Styles Palette opens the palette with the list of comments' styles.



The toolbar at the top allows you to do the following things:

- 1. Clone. Creates the style of the comment, identical to the selected one.
- 2. Rename. Allows you to rename the selected style.
- 3. **Reset**. Resets the style of the selected comment to default. All custom styles except for the default ones will be removed.
- 4. Delete. Deletes the selected comment style.
- 5. **Properties**. If you select the **Properties** item, the pane appears with the tabs which allow you to adjust the appearance and other properties of the selected tool.
- 6. Set Current. Sets the selected custom style to the current tool's style.

### Form

Form allows you to enter and retrieve data from  $Adobe^{\bigcirc}$  Acrobat $^{\bigcirc}$  Forms.

Clicking this menu item opens a submenu of choices:

Manage Form Data		- F	
Highlight Fields	Ctrl+Alt+H	•	Manage Form D Highlight Fields
Reset Form			Reset Form

# Manage Form Data



## Import Data...

Import Data to Form... allows you to import data from an FDF file to an AcroForm.

N.B. A PDF AcroForm with matching field names as the form data FDF file must be the Active document for this to work.

When you select this option, the following dialog appears:

Select the saved form data file that matches the fields in the open form document, by default **%Docnamedata.fdf**, where %Docname is the name of the active AcroForm<sup>©</sup> document.

Click **Open**, and the fields in the active document will then contain the data from the FDF form data file.

#### Export Data...

**Export Data from Form...** allows you to export data from an **AcroForm** to an Adobe<sup>©</sup> Acrobat<sup>©</sup> FDF file.

**N.B. A PDF with Form data must be the Active document for this to work.** When you select this option, the following dialog appears:

The default name of the saved form data file is defined as **%Docname-data.fdf**, where %Docname is the name of the Active document. Simply accept or specify the name you wish to use for the form data, and an Adobe<sup>®</sup> Acrobat<sup>®</sup> FDF format file will be created.

# Highlight Fields

Highlight Fields. Allows you to set the highlight options for the form fields.



- 1. All Fields. Allows you to apply highlight options to all kinds of form fields.
- 2. **Push Buttons.** Highlights buttons which initiates a change on the user's computer, such as opening a file or others.
- 3. Check Boxes. Highlights boxes which present yes-or-no choices for individual items. If the form contains multiple check boxes, the user can typically select as many or few of these as wanted.
- 4. **Radio Buttons**. Highlights buttons which present a group of choices from which the user can select only one item.
- 5. Combo Boxes. Highlights boxes which allow you either choose an item from a pop-up menu or type in a value.
- 6. List Boxes. Highlights boxes which allow you to choose a displayed list of options.
- 7. Text Boxes. Highlights boxes which allow you to type in text.
- 8. Barcodes. Highlights barcode fields.
- 9. Signatures. Allow you electronically sign a PDF document with a digital signature.
- 10. **Only Required Fields**. Allows you to select a border color of form fields. The border appears for required form

fields only after you attempt to submit the form.

## Reset Form

Reset Form resets the form fields, removing all changes to the initial state.

# Object

The **Object** menu allows you to **Transform** the selected objects in the document.

Transform Selection...

Duplicate Annotations...

Transform Selection Duplicate Annotations...

## Transform Selection

**Transform Selection** allows you to control the position, size and rotation of the selected object (comments, content objects).

To select a content object, you may use the Edit Content button from the Comment And Markup Toolbar.

2	Transform	Sel	ection	>
	119.1 mm 127.2 mm	\$	🗌 ΔΧ;ΔΥ Unit: millimeter	-
Width: Height:	193.7 mm 111.1 mm	\$	100%	÷ 8
Rotation:	0° \$		Shear: 0°	¢
	<u>O</u> K		Cancel	

- 1. **X and Y**. Allow you to position an object wherever you need to on the PDF page by applying X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) offset values to the object. You may alter the location by changing the spin boxes directly by entering position values or by clicking the spin box up and down arrows. The PDF page coordinate system measures vertical position upwards from the lower left corner.
- 2. **AX; AY**. If checked, will allow you to set the offset values relative to the current position of the object.
- 3. Unit. The Units may be points, inches, centimeters, millimeters or picas.
- 4. Width. Horizontal size of object on page, in Units or percentage points.
- 5. Height. Vertical size of object on page, in Units or percentage points.
- 6. Rotation. This box allows you to rotate the object clockwise or counterclockwise.
- 7. **Shear**. Slants an object along a horizontal axis. To shear the object, enter a desired shear angle into the spin box.

## Duplicate Annotations...

**Duplicate Annotations...** Duplicates selected annotations from the current page to the next one using specified parameters.

Duplica	te Annotations
Duplicate Options	
Duplicates Co	unt: 2 \$
<u>H</u> orizontal Off	set: 0 mm 🗘
<u>V</u> ertical Off	set: 0 mm 🗘
Page Off	iset: 1 🗘

To duplicate the annotations open the **Duplicate Annotations** dialog box and set the options:

- 1. Duplicates Count. Sets the number of copies.
- 2. Horizontal Offset. Sets the horizontal offset.
- 3. Vertical Offset. Sets the vertical offset.
- 4. Page Offset. Sets the number of pages, which will be left without annotations.

### Tools

The Tools menu activates features to manipulate the PDF document display.



Selecting Basic Tools submenu allows selection of one of three options:



Selecting the **Zoom Tools** submenu allows selection of one of three options:



The Content Editing Tools submenu allows selection of the following option:



The Comment & Markup menu hosts the Markup tools, plus the File Attachment Tool, Sound Tool and the Show Drawing Toolbar option:



Selecting Measuring Tools submenu allows selection of one of three options:

🖋 Distance Tool	•
🕎 Perimeter Tool	•
⊘ Area Tool	•
A Calibrate Measurement	Ctrl+Shift+C

Selecting Link Tools submenu allows selection of the following option:



### **Basic Tools**

Selecting **Basic Tools** submenu allows selection of one of three options:



See the subtopics for a description of each tool.

#### Hand Tool

Hand Tool activates the "Hand Tool" and changes the cursor to a hand.

Hand Tool mode permits you to "grab" the PDF page and move it within the pane by clicking and dragging the page you can also select another page as it comes into view as you scroll through a file and reselect an alternate page and effectively scroll through the entire file in this way by changing the 'grabbed' page area or indeed the page selected.

#### **Snapshot Tool**

(Camera Icon) permits copying a rectangular area of a PDF page or the entire visible page area to the clipboard as a Bitmap, which can be pasted into a bitmap editor such as Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Paint<sup>®</sup> or indeed any other Windows application that allows the copy/pasting of content from the Windows clipboard. When selected, the cursor is changed to a **Camera** icon. Clicking on a page will copy the entire page, or you may click-and-drag to outline a rectangular area of the page. When you release the left mouse button, the outlined area will be copied to the clipboard as a bitmap. Clicking on the Hand or Select tools will clear the selection.

#### Select Tool

The **Select Tool** allows you to select text on the screen for editing using the **Edit** menu items.

You can use the Copy and Paste commands to copy the selected text into another application. If you hold the pointer over the text selection, a menu appears that lets you copy, highlight, or underline the text, among other options.
## Zoom Tools

Selecting the Zoom Tools submenu allows selection of one of four options:



See the subtopics for a description of each tool.

### Zoom Tool

Zoom Tool increases or decreases the Zoom percentage, enlarging or shrinking the PDF page within the pane.

### Loupe Tool

The **Loupe Tool** opens a special dialog window that is linked to a scrollable, resizable rectangular that acts as a cursor and permits the selection of a portion of the PDF page/file.

The selected area can be resized and its contents view size zoomed larger or smaller to suit. Further - like the main 'snapshot' tool - the defined Loupe content area can also be copied to the clip board and used as required.



The toolbar at the top of the page allows you to change the zoom percentage, and clicking the Snap shot (camera) icon copies the displayed area to the clipboard as a bitmap.

### Pan and Zoom

When this is selected, the Pan and Zoom window appears:

Pan and Zoom		×
82.16%	- 🕞 😑 🕼 <٦ 🔼 7/209 ८) (	
	<ul> <li>And the standard standard</li></ul>	
	<ul> <li>A structure data di a surviva il sublichara cue di fai a surviva il surviva cue di surviva il surviva il surviva il surviva il surviva i</li></ul>	
	the second se	

The Pan and Zoom window shows a representation of the current page(s) with a Blue rectangle that shows the area being displayed in the main window in a reduced form. You may use the **Hand** control to move the blue rectangle and the main display window will automatically follow that movement.

1. The control bar at the top of the window shows the current display area's zoom factor. The blue + and - buttons may be used to change the zoom factor, or you may click the down arrow to open a list of standard zoom factors:

6400%	
3200%	
2400%	
1600%	
800%	
400%	
200%	
100%	
50%	
25%	
12.5%	
8.33%	
Actual Siz	ze
Fit Page	
Fit Width	

- 2. The white arrow buttons navigate to the various pages of the currently displayed PDF document.
- 3. The Camera button allows you to make a snapshot of the highlighted area of the page.

# Content Editing Tools

The new Full Page content editing feature is now available to users of PDF-XChange Editor. It allows you to make changes to a PDF page content quickly and easily.

### Edit Content Tool

Edit Content Tool allows you to move or resize the content items like images or text blocks and edit text in them.

To edit the page content you need to choose the content object for editing:

1. Select the Edit Content Tool button from the Comment And Markup toolbar.



2. Click on the content item you wish to edit. This will show a bounding box with selection handles around the object. The handles can be used for resizing or rotating the object. If you need a certain area to be selected, click and drag the mouse.

To move the object, place the pointer to the central circle and drag the object.



To resize the object, pull one of the yellow handles.



To rotate the object, click and drag the green handle above the object.



3. If you right-click on the selected object, the following menu appears:



- 4. Cut. Allows you to Cut base content for pasting.
- 5. Copy. Allows you to Copy base content for pasting.
- 6. Paste. Allows you to paste base content.
- N.B. Cut, Copy, Paste of base content is not available at the time this documentation was written.
  7. Properties. To adjust the properties of the selected object, click at the arrow which appears when you select

one of the properties.

Page Content Propert	ties	×
▲ Style		
Fill Color	* Mixed	
Stroke Color	* None	
Border Width	— 1 pt	
Blend Mode	E Normal	
Font	Mixed	
Font Size	Mixed	

Except for editing images, you can edit the text blocks or text within your PDF document.

- 1. To edit the text block, select it with the help of the **Edit Content Tool** button. You can move, resize or rotate the whole text block.
- 2. To edit the text, double click the selected text block. This will allow you to select the text fragment for editing. You can type, cut, copy, paste the text, change its color, font, font size specify the Paragraph settings and apply the Text Style options to the text.



3. If you right-click on the selected text, the following menu will be opened:



- 1. Undo. Reverses the last editing change made to the text.
- 2. Cut. Allows you to remove selected text and copies it to the clipboard.
- 3. Copy. Copies selected text to the clipboard.
- 4. Paste. Pastes clipboard text to the selected location.
- 5. Select All. Allows you to select the whole text from the chosen text box for editing.
- 6. **Paragraph...** Sets the paragraph options for the selected text.

General		
Alignment: Left		
ndentation		
Left: 0 pt 🗘	Special:	By:
Right: 0 pt 😂	(No) -	)
pacing		
Before: 0 pt 😂	Line spacing:	At:
After: 0 pt 👙	Single 👻	)

7. Text Style. Opens the following submenu of formatting options:

B Bold
I Italic
$\underline{\mathbf{U}}$ Underline
X <sup>2</sup> Superscript
X <sub>2</sub> Subscript
Clear Text Formatting
T Make Current Text Format as Default
🌄 Apply Default Text Format

8. Hyphenate Text. Allows the automatic hyphenation of the text.

Besides, you may change the properties of the text with the help of the **Properties Toolbar** which appears at the Toolbar area when the text fragment is selected:

🖌 🖿 • 💽 • 🔄 - 1 pt 👻 Tahoma 🔹 67 pt 👻 A\* A\* B I U T X<sub>2</sub> X<sup>2</sup> 🧱 🗮 📰 Ty Clear Style Ty Make Default Style Ty Apply Default Style

You may also use the following hot keys to format the text entry:

- 1. Ctrl+B Bold
- 2. Ctrl+I Italic
- 3. Ctrl+U Underline
- 4. Ctrl+Shift+S Strikethrough
- 5. **Ctrl+Shift++** Superscript
- 6. Ctrl+Shift+- Subscript
- 7. The **Typewriter Toolbar** supports additional options for selecting **Font** and **Size**.

Note that PDF files created from solely Image based content (e.g. scanned to PDF) cannot be text edited - there is no actual text within the PDF file - simply an image, even though the image may represent text. That is why you will be able only to move, resize or rotate such text.

## Add Text Tool

To add the text to a pdf page you need to choose the text for editing:

1. Select the **Add Text Tool** button from the Content Editing Tools toolbar.



Click where you want to add text and type the text.
 See Editing Content for more information on text editing.

## Comment And Markup Tools

The Comment And Markup menu hosts:



Note that it is entirely possible to add Sticky Notes and Markups to a document, save them, and then remove them at a later time!

### Important! Please read!

All of the **Comment And Markup Tools** have one thing in common: they each support TWO different Properties screens; one for the "contents" and a common one for the "container".

1. If you right-click on a container, you will get the common container pop-up menu:

Open Pop-Up Note	
Hide Pop-Up Note	
Reset Pop-Up Note L	ocation
🖌 Cut	Ctrl+X
🔊 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
😤 Flatten	
K Add Reply	
Status	•
Order	•
Make Current P	roperties Defaul
Apply Default P	roperties
Properties	

See Container Properties for additional information on this common menu and its items.

- 2. To access the **Contents Properties** pop-up, you must first double click on the contents inside the container. Each tool has its own contents properties, and will be discussed with the tool.
- 3. Some **Comment And Markup Tools** also support Property Toolbars for both the container and contents. See the individual tools for examples of these.

## **Container Properties**

The Container Properties menu allows you to:

Open Pop-Up Note	
Hide Pop-Up Note	
Reset Pop-Up Note	Location
👆 Cut	Ctrl+X
🔊 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
🚰 Flatten	
🥱 Add Reply	
Status	•
Order	•
Make Current P	Properties Defaul
Apply Default P	Properties
Properties	

1. **Open Pop-Up Note**. Opens a new or existing note for the item. Your user name and the date and time of the note are automatically entered.

You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the note.

- 2. Hide Pop-Up Note. Hides the note.
- 3. **Reset Pop-Up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 4. Cuts the selected container.
- 5. Copy. Copies the selected container.
- 6. **Paste**. Pastes the copied container.
- 7. Delete. Deletes the annotation's container (and contents).
- 8. Flatten. Flattens the container in case you want to make it impossible to change it later.
- 9. Add Reply. Adds a reply area to the note.
- 10. Status. Defines the status of the container.



11. Order. Allows you to set the order of the containers.



- 12. Flip Line. Allows you to turn the line around.
- 13. Make Current Properties Default. Sets the current properties as the default ones for all future containers of this type.
- 14. Apply Default Properties. Allows you to change the properties of the markup for the one, saved as default.
- 15. **Properties...** If you select the **Properties...** item, the pane appears with the tabs which allow you to adjust the appearance and other properties of the container:
  - 1. The **General** tab allows you to enter additional information about the notation.
  - 2. The Style
  - 3. The **Appearance** tab allows you to adjust the container's visual appearance.
  - 4. The **Advanced** button allows you to either set the current container's Appearance properties to the default values, or to set the default values for future containers of this markup.

## Comment And Markup Example

This is an example of creating a **Comment** or **Markup** using the **Annotation** feature by adding a pop-up to an **Oval** markup. The steps apply to ALL comment and markup tools.

- 1. Select the **Oval Tool** from the toolbar or menu. This displays a thin crosshair cursor.
- 2. Position the cursor at the upper left corner of the area you want to mark, and then left-click and drag the cursor to the lower right position.
- 3. When you release the mouse button a "bounding rectangle" will appear. If you move the cursor to the corners or edges of the rectangle, the cursor will change to standard resizing arrow, enabling you to adjust the boundaries of the oval to more closely match the area of interest. If you move the cursor inside the rectangle then it will change to a four-way arrow cursor, allowing you to click-and-drag the entire oval to a new location without changing its size. The blue rectangle will disappear when the document is saved.
- 4. In addition, if you right-click with the four-way arrow cursor visible, the following pop-up menu becomes visible.

	Open Pop-Up No	te
	Hide Pop-Up Not	e
	Reset Pop-Up Not	te Location
	Cut	Ctrl+X
	🛐 Сору	Ctrl+C
	Paste	Ctrl+V
	Delete	Delete
- 1	🚱 Flatten	
	K Add Reply	
- 1	Status	•
	Order	•
	Make Current Pro	perties Defaul
	Apply Default Pro	perties
	Properties	

The menu items are:

1. **Open Pop-up Note**. Opens a new or existing note for the item. Your user name and the date and time of the note are automatically entered. You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the note.



- 2. **Reset Pop-up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 3. Cut. Cuts the Markup and note.
- 4. Copy. Copies the selected Markup and note.
- 5. **Paste**. Pastes the copied Markup and note.
- 6. **Delete**. Deletes the Markup and note.
- 7. Flatten. Flattens the Markup in case you want to make it impossible to change it later.
- 8. Add Reply. Adds a reply area to the note.



9. Status. Defines the status of the note.



10. Order. Allows you to set the order of the notes.



11. Make Current Properties Default. Sets the current properties of the markup as the default ones for

new markups of the same type.

- 12. **Apply Default Properties**. Allows you to change the properties of the markup to the ones, saved as default.
- 13. **Properties...** Opens a pane that allows you to change the properties of the markup shape and note.

Oval Properties		×
▲ General		
Subject	Oval	
Author	root	
Created	8/15/2013, 11:23:14 AM	
Modified	8/15/2013, 11:23:14 AM	
▲ Style		
Fill Color	× None	
Stroke Color	255,0,0	
Border Style	Solid	
Border Width	— 1 pt	
Opacity	100%	
Blend Mode	E Normal	

- 1. General. Allows you to change the heading fields of the markup.
- 2. Style. Allows you to change the markup area to something more useful.
  - 1. **Fill Color**. Allows you to select the fill color.
  - 2. Stroke Color. Allows you to select the stroke color.
  - 3. Border Style. Allows you to select the style of the border.
  - 4. Border Width. Allows you to select the width of the border.
  - 5. **Opacity**. Allows you to select the opacity percentage.
  - 6. **Blend Mode**. Controls the image editing in a way that two layers of the image are blended into each other. There is a standard set of blend modes. Separable blend modes are the following: Normal, Multiply, Screen, Overlay, Darken, Lighten, Color Dodge, Color Burn, Hard Light, Soft Light, Difference and Exclusion. Nonseparable blend modes are Hue, Saturation, Color, and Luminosity.



- 1. **Normal**. This is the default mode. It does not change an image by mixing its two layers and uses only the top layer.
- 2. **Multiply**. This mode is used for darkening the images. It overlays the color of the bottom layer on the top one. If the top layer is white, nothing will be changed.
- 3. **Screen**. This mode is opposite to Multiply and is used for lightening the images. It overlays the inverted top layer on the bottom one what makes the picture brighter.
- 4. **Overlay**. This is the combination of Multiply and Screen modes. It mixes the top and bottom layers. As a result, the light parts of the top layer become lighter and the dark ones become darker.
- 5. Darken. It combines the colors of the top and bottom layers and mixes the pixels in those parts where the top layer is darker than the bottom one. It replaces the lighter top layer pixels with the darker ones from the bottom layer. If the color of the top layer is darker than the bottom layer color, the pixels remain unchanged.
- 6. Lighten. This mode is opposite to Darken. It replaces the darker top layer pixels with the lighter ones from the bottom layer. If the color of the top layer is lighter than the bottom layer color, the pixels remain unchanged.
- 7. **Color Dodge**. The brighter parts of the top layer enhance the brightness of the bottom layer. If the top layer is black, the image will remain unchanged.
- 8. **Color Burn**. The darker parts of the top layer enhance the darkness of the bottom layer. If the top layer is white, the image will remain unchanged.
- 9. Hard Light. It uses the same method as the Overlay mode, but the result is more intense. The top layer is changed in the same way as in the Multiply or Screen blend modes, depending on the layer's color. If the top layer is lighter than 50% gray, the picture is lightened. If the top layer is darker than 50% gray, the picture is darkened. If the top layer is exactly 50% gray, there will be no effect.
- 10. Soft Light. This mode also uses the same method as the Overlay mode, but the result is softer. The top layer is changed in the same way as in the Color Dodge or Color Burn blend modes, depending on the layer's color. If the top layer is lighter than 50% gray, the picture is lightened. If the top layer is darker than 50% gray, the picture is darkened. If the top layer is exactly 50% gray, there will be no effect.
- 11. **Difference**. Subtracts the top layer from the bottom one or the bottom layer from the top one, depending on which of those is brighter. Blending with black does not give the result. Blending with white inverts the image.

- 12. Exclusion. This mode is similar to Difference but this one is lower in contrast.
- 13. Hue. Combines Hue of the top layer with Saturation and Luminance of the bottom layer.
- 14. Saturation. Combines the Saturation of the top layer with Hue and Luminance of the bottom layer.
- 15. **Color**. Combines the Hue and Saturation of the top layer with the Luminance of the bottom layer.
- 16. **Luminosity**. Combines the Luminance of the top layer with the Hue and Saturation of the bottom layer.

## Edit Multiple Comments

Clicking the **Edit Multiple Comments** button you can select a group of comments by clicking and dragging the mouse cursor.

To move the group of comments, drag the selected area with your mouse. To resize the group of comments, drag one of the resize (yellow) handles. To rotate the group of comments, drag the rotate (green) handle.

If you right-click on the selected area the following menu will appear:

Hide Pop-Up No	te
• •	
Reset Pop-Up No	ote Location
Cut	Ctrl+X
🛐 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
😤 Flatten	
Status	•
Order	•
Align	,
Apply Defau	ult Propertie
Properties	

- 1. **Open Pop-Up Note**. Opens the new or existing notes for all of the items. Your user name and the date and time of the notes are automatically entered.
- You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the notes.
- 2. Hide Pop-Up Note. Hides all of the notes.
- 3. **Reset Pop-Up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 4. Cuts the selected group of containers.
- 5. Copy. Copies the selected group of containers.
- 6. Paste. Pastes the copied group of containers.
- 7. Delete. Deletes the group of annotation's containers (and contents).
- 8. Flatten. Flattens the group of containers in case you want to make it impossible to change them later.
- 9. Status. Defines the status of the containers.



10. Order. Allows you to set the order of the containers.



11. Align. Allows you to control the alignment distribution and size of the whole group of comments.



- 12. **Apply Default Properties**. Allows you to change the properties of the comments for the ones, saved as default.
- Properties.... Opens the Properties pane for the selected group of comments. Besides, you may change the properties of the comments with the help of the Properties Toolbar which appears at the Toolbar area when the group of comments is selected:



### Sticky Note Tool

The Sticky Note Tool adds a Sticky Note wherever you need one for commenting.

Simply select the tool and a "sticky note cursor" appears. Place the cursor where you want the note and click it and a pop-up note appears:



- 1. You may move the note by clicking on the frame and dragging the note where you like.
- 2. You may edit the pop-up note by clicking inside the light colored area and typing whatever text you like.
- 3. You may click **Ctrl-E** to display the Sticky Note toolbar.
- 4. You may also change the properties of the note by right-clicking inside the frame (yellow area in the example) and the following menu appears:

Open Pop-Up Note	
Hide Pop-Up Note	
Reset Pop-Up Note L	ocation
🖌 Cut	Ctrl+X
🔊 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
🚰 Flatten	
S Add Reply	
Status	•
Order	÷
Make Current Pr	operties Defaul
Apply Default Pr	operties
Properties	

1. **Open Pop-up Note**. Opens a new or existing note for the item. Your user name and the date and time of the note are automatically entered.

You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the note.

- 2. **Reset Pop-up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 3. **Cut**. Cuts the selected note.

- 4. Copy. Copies the selected note.
- 5. Paste. Pastes the copied note.
- 6. **Delete**. Deletes the note (and contents).
- 7. Flatten. Flattens the note in case you want to make it impossible to change it later.
- 8. Add Reply. Opens a reply area under the main text area of the note so others can add additional text or comments.
- 9. Status. Defines the status of the note.



10. Order. Allows you to set the order of the notes.

Bring To <u>F</u> ront
Send To <u>B</u> ack
Bring Forward
Send B <u>a</u> ckward

- 11. **Make Current Properties Default**. Sets the current properties of the **Sticky Note** as the default ones for new markups of the same type.
- 12. **Apply Default Properties**. Allows you to change the properties of the markup for the ones, saved as default.
- 13. **Properties...** Opens the Properties dialog for the Sticky Note.

Sticky Note Properties			
General			
Subject	Sticky Note		
Author	root		
Created	8/15/2013, 11:27:12 AM		
Modified	8/15/2013, 11:27:12 AM		
▲ Style			
Fill Color	255,255,0		
Icon	戸 Comment		
Opacity	100%		

See **Comment and Markup Example** for additional information on manipulating the Sticky Note properties.

## Notation Tools

Typewriter Tool Textbox Tool Callout Tool

## Typewriter Tool

The **Typewriter Tool** allows you to enter text comments into a PDF page:

```
This is an example of the Typewriter Tool in action!
```

- 1. Click the **Typewriter Tool** button and then click the starting position for the text entry. Then just type.
- 2. Press **Enter** to start a new line.
- 3. If you right-click on the typed and selected text, you open the following menu:

	🕤 Undo
	Cut
	🛐 Сору
	Paste
	Select All
	Paragraph
	Text Style →
1	Hyphenate Text

- 1. Undo. Reverses the last editing change made to the typed text.
- 2. Cut. Allows you to remove selected typed text and copies it to the clipboard.
- 3. Copy. Copies selected typed text to the clipboard.
- 4. Paste. Pastes clipboard text to the chosen location.
- 5. Select All. Allows you to select the whole typed text for editing.
- 6. Paragraph.... Sets the paragraph options for the Typewriter text.

General					
Alignment	: Left				
Indentation					
Left	: 0 pt	\$	Special:	В	y:
Right	: 0 pt	\$	(No)	-	\$
Spacing					
Before	: 0 pt	\$	Line spacing:	A	t:
After	: 0 pt	÷	Single	-	\$

7. Text Style. Opens the following submenu of formatting options:

B Bold
I Italic
$\underline{\mathrm{U}}$ Underline
X <sup>2</sup> Superscript
X <sub>2</sub> Subscript
Ty Clear Text Formatting
T Make Current Text Format as Default
To Apply Default Text Format

Besides, you may change the properties of the text with the help of the **Properties Toolbar** which appears at the Toolbar area when the Typewriter Text is selected. You can toggle the Properties toolbar by using CTRL+E:



You may also use the following hot keys to format the text entry:

- 1. Ctrl+B Bold
- 2. Ctrl+I Italic
- 3. Ctrl+U Underline
- 4. Ctrl+Shift+S Strikethrough
- 5. Ctrl+Shift++ Superscript
- 6. **Ctrl+Shift+-** Subscript
- 7. The Typewriter Toolbar supports additional options for selecting Font and Size.
- 4. If you right-click on the container you open the following menu:

- N	
Cut	Ctrl+X
🔊 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
🚰 Flatten	
Status	•
Order	•
Make Current P	roperties Default
Apply Default P	roperties
Properties	

- 1. Cuts the selected container.
- 2. Copy. Copies the selected container.
- 3. Paste. Pastes the copied container.
- 4 Delete. Deletes the annotation's container (and contents).
- 5. Flatten. Flattens the container in case you want to make it impossible to change it later.
- 6. **Status**. Defines the status of the container.

4	None
	O Accepted
	Cancelled
	Completed
	Kejected

7. Order. Allows you to set the order of the containers.



- 8. Make Current Properties Default. This allows you to set the currently selected Font, Font size etc as the default font/size etc whenever you select the Typewriter tool.
- 9. **Apply Default Properties**. Allows you to change the appearance of the Typewriter tool for the one, saved as default.
- 10. **Properties...** Opens the Properties dialog for the Typewriter Tool.

Typewriter Properties			
▲ General			
Subject	Typewriter		
Author	lesya		
Created	27.02.2014, 22:13:58		
Modified	27.02.2014, 22:17:09		
Read Only	False		
Locked	False		
▲ Other			
Fill Color	× None		
Stroke Color	0,0,0		
Border	Solid		
Width	— 0 pt		
Opacity	100%		
Blend Mode	Normal		

Character		
Fill Color	0,0,0	
Font	Courier New	
Font Size	12 pt	
Bold	False	
Italic	False	
Underline	False	
Strikethrough	False	
Script Style	No	
Paragraph		
Text Alignment	Left	

## Textbox Tool

The **Textbox Tool** allows you to add text on a page in a text box.

Some T	ext typed	into the b	ox.

- 1. To use the tool, click the tool in either the menu or the toolbar, and a cross cursor will appear at the upper left corner Drag the resulting text box away from the click point and the arrow will appear.
- Click inside the box to begin typing text. In addition, clicking the edge of the box restores the small resizing boxes, permitting you to change the size of the text box.
- The Textbox Toolbar supports additional options for selecting Font and Size. You may change the properties of the text with the help of the Toolbar which appears at the Toolbar area when the Typewriter Text is selected:

	-	Courier New	- 12 pt	-	A A	В	I	U	Ŧ	$\mathbf{X}_2$	X <sup>2</sup>		三三		Clear Style	]
--	---	-------------	---------	---	-----	---	---	---	---	----------------	----------------	--	----	--	-------------	---

# TIP - Whilst editing existing page content is for the most part - not currently possible - replacing existing content is...

For example - if you want to cover up some existing text or content on a PDF page - use the text box tool to apply replacement content (or no content if required) set the background color to match the existing page and also set the box borders to match - and then **Flatten** the box and content so it cannot be moved or erased to reveal the original content.

## Callout Tool

The **Callout Tool** allows you to add a text box with an arrow pointing to a selected location on the page.



- 1. To use the tool, click the tool in either the menu or the toolbar, and a cross cursor will appear.
- 2. Move the cursor to where you want the point of the arrow to appear.
- 3. Click and then drag the resulting text box away from the click point and the arrow will appear.
- 4. Click inside the box to begin typing text.
- 5. In addition, clicking the edge of the box restores the small boxes, permitting you to change the look and size of the arrow and text box.
- 6. The Callout Toolbar supports additional options for selecting Font and Size. You may change the properties of the text with the help of the Toolbar which appears at the Toolbar area when the Typewriter Text is selected:

Courier New $\overline{}$ 12 pt $\overline{}$ A $\overline{}$ B $I \underline{U} \underline{T} x_2 x^2 \equiv \overline{\Xi} \equiv \overline{\Xi}$
---

You can change the properties of the annotation by selecting to container. See more information about annotation containers here.

# Text Highlighting Tools

Highlight Text Tool Crossout Text Tool Underline Text Tool

## Highlight Text Tool

The Highlight Text Tool permits you to highlight text within the PDF document, and works like the Select Tool.

#### Note however that you cannot Highlight image based text!

For example if you scan a page to PDF - there is no text in that file can be modified - only image based content!

To use the **Highlight Text Tool**, click on the menu item, and a selection cursor will appear. Click and drag the selection cursor over the text to be highlighted. When you release the mouse button, the selected text will then appear to be highlighted with color, like a highlighter pen.



You can change properties such as Color, blend mode and opacity from the properties Toolbar (Use Ctrl+E to toggle)

	Changes the highlight colour Offers a selection of blend mode options	
. 🛃 -	100% - Keep Selected 🔛 Exclusive Mode 📝 Properties	
	Changes the opacity	

- 1. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 2. Exclusive Mode. Excludes annotations that might be overlapping the target text so that the text can be selected. Please note that you will not be able to Edit comments or annotations when this option is turned on.
- 3. **Properties.** Opens the properties pane

Right-clicking inside the highlighted area will open the pop-up menu. See **Sticky Note Tool** for more information on the pop-up menu.

# N.B. If you select the Delete option from the pop-up menu, only the highlighting will be deleted. The underlying text is not changed in any way!

## Crossout Text Tool

The **Crossout Text Tool** permits you to cross out the selected text.

#### Note however that you cannot Crossout image based text!

For example if you scan a page to PDF - there is no text in that file can be modified - only image based content!

To use the Crossout Text Tool, click on the menu item, and a selection cursor will appear. Click and drag the selection cursor over the text to be crossed out. When you release the mouse button, the selected text will then appear to be crossed out.



You can change properties such as Color, blend mode and opacity from the properties Toolbar (Use Ctrl+E to toggle)

	Changes the highlight colour	Offers a selection of blend mode options
. 🛃 -	100% 🔻 📑 - 🖂 Keep Selected	d 🔛 Exclusive Mode 📑 Properties
	Changes the opacity	

- 1. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 2. Exclusive Mode. Excludes annotations that might be overlapping the target text so that the text can be selected. Please note that you will not be able to Edit comments or annotations when this option is turned on.
- 3. **Properties.** Opens the properties pane

Right-clicking inside the crossed out area will open the pop-up menu. See Sticky Note Tool for more information on the pop-up menu.

# N.B. If you select the Delete option from the pop-up menu, only the crossouts will be deleted. The underlying text is not changed in any way!

## Underline Text Tool

The **Underline Text Tool** permits you to underline the selected text.

#### Note however that you cannot Underline image based text!

For example if you scan a page to PDF - there is no text in that file can be modified - only image based content!

To use the **Underline Text Tool**, click on the menu item, and a selection cursor will appear. Click and drag the selection cursor over the text to be underlined. When you release the mouse button, the selected text will then appear to be underlined.



You can change properties such as Color, blend mode and opacity from the properties Toolbar (Use Ctrl+E to toggle)

	Changes the highlight colour	Offers a selection of blend mode options
H 🕇 -	100% - Keep Select	ted 🔛 Exclusive Mode 📝 Properties
	Changes the opacity	

- 1. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 2. **Exclusive Mode.** Excludes annotations that might be overlapping the target text so that the text can be selected. Please note that you will not be able to Edit comments or annotations when this option is turned on.
- 3. Properties. Opens the properties pane

Right-clicking inside the underlined area will open the pop-up menu. See Sticky Note Tool for more information on the pop-up menu.

# N.B. If you select the Delete option from the pop-up menu, only the underlining will be deleted. The underlying text is not changed in any way!

## Markup Tools

The **Markup Tools** allow you to insert shapes in the currently displayed PDF document page. They allow you to comment the document in many creative ways.

After you **complete** any shape using one of the tools, you may then comment it with a pop-up message!

See Comment And Markup Example for a general discussion of how to use the Markup Tools and Comments.

### Line and Arrow Tools

The Line and Arrow Tools are simply two forms of the same markup control.



For both tools, click the appropriate button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Select the starting point and then click-and-drag the cursor to the ending point. For the Arrow tool, an arrow head appears at the end of the arrow when drawn.

After drawing the line or arrow, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

You may adjust the ends of the line or arrow by selecting **Properties...** from the pop-up menu, and setting the Line Starting and Line Ending Styles for the Start or End of the line.

#### Properties Toolbar for Line and Arrow Tools



- 1. Fill Color. Does not apply to line or arrow annotations.
- 2. Stroke Color. Changes the color of the line or arrow.
- 3. Border. Provides more border styles:

Solid	
Dashed (2 white, 2 black)	
Dashed (3 white, 3 black)	
Dashed (4 white, 4 black)	
Dashed (4-3-2-3)	
Dashed (4-3-16-3)	
— - — - Dashed (8-4-4-4)	

- 4. Width.
- 5. Line Start. Provides a variety of line starts:



#### 6. Line End.



- 7. Opacity. Adjust the opacity.
- 8. Blend mode. Chose from various blend mode options.
- 9. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 10. **Exclusive Mode.** Excludes annotations that might be overlapping the target text so that the text can be selected. Please note that you will not be able to Edit comments or annotations when this option is turned on.
- 11. Properties. Opens the properties pane

### Rectangle Tool

The **Rectangle Tool** allows you to draw a rectangle on the currently displayed PDF document page.



To draw the **Rectangle**, click the **Rectangle** button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Position the cursor at the upper left corner of the area you want to mark, and then left-click and drag the cursor to the lower right position.

#### **Properties Toolbar for Rectangle Tool**



- 1. Fill Color. Changes the background color.
- 2. Stroke Color. Changes the color of the border.
- 3. Border. Provides more border styles:



- 4. Width. Adjusts the border width.
- 5. Opacity. Changes the opacity of the annotation.
- 6. Blend mode. Changes the Blend mode.
- 7. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 8. Exclusive mode. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 9. **Properties.** Opens the properties pane

After drawing the rectangle, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.
# Oval (Circle) Tool

The **Oval (Circle) Tool** allows you to draw ovals and circles on the currently displayed PDF document page. See **Comment And Markup Example** for an example of using the **Oval (Circle) Tool**.



- 1. Fill Color. Changes the background color.
- 2. Stroke Color. Changes the color of the border.
- 3. Border. Provides more border styles:

Solid
Dashed (2 white, 2 black)
Dashed (3 white, 3 black)
Dashed (4 white, 4 black)
Dashed (4-3-2-3)
Dashed (4-3-16-3)
— - — - Dashed (8-4-4-4)
Cloudy
Cloudy Extra

- 4. Width. Adjusts the border width.
- 5. **Opacity.** Changes the opacity of the annotation.
- 6. Blend mode. Changes the Blend mode.
- 7. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 8. Exclusive mode. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 9. Properties. Opens the properties pane

## Polygon Line Tool

The **Polygon Line Tool** is an extension of the basic **Line Tool** that allows you to draw multiple connected line segments:



To draw the **Polygon Line**, click the **Polygon Line Tool** button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Select a starting point and click-and-drag the cursor to the next point. When you get there, click again to start a new segment that is automatically connected to the first. Repeat until you reach your stopping point and then double click to end the line.

#### Properties Toolbar for the Polygon Line Tool



- 1. Fill Color. Does not apply to line or arrow annotations.
- 2. Stroke Color. Changes the color of the line or arrow.
- 3. Border. Provides more border styles:



4. Width.

5. Line Start. Provides a variety of line starts:



6. Line End.



- 7. **Opacity.** Adjust the opacity.
- 8. Blend mode. Chose from various blend mode options.
- 9. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 10. **Exclusive Mode.** Excludes annotations that might be overlapping the target text so that the text can be selected. Please note that you will not be able to Edit comments or annotations when this option is turned on.
- 11. Properties. Opens the properties pane

After you complete the **Polygon Line**, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

You may adjust the ends of the line or arrow by selecting **Properties...** from the pop-up menu, and setting the Line Starting and Line Ending Styles for the Start or End of the line.

### Polygon Tool

The **Polygon Tool** draws a polygon outline around selected parts of the PDF page to highlight them:



To draw the polygon, click the **Polygon** markup button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Click a series of points around the area of interest to draw the outline. At the starting point of the polygon there appears a small blue circle. To end the polygon, you have to click at that circle:



#### Properties Toolbar for Polygon Tool



- 1. Fill Color. Changes the background color.
- 2. Stroke Color. Changes the color of the border.
- 3. Border. Provides more border styles:



- 4. Width. Adjusts the border width.
- 5. **Opacity.** Changes the opacity of the annotation.
- 6. Blend mode. Changes the Blend mode.
- 7. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 8. Exclusive mode. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 9. Properties. Opens the properties pane

After you complete the **Polygon**, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

You may also adjust the Properties of the Polygon by selecting Properties....

### Cloud Tool

The **Cloud Tool** draws a "cloud" outline around selected parts of the PDF page to highlight them:



To draw the cloud, click the **Cloud** markup button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Click a series of points around the area of interest to draw the cloud outline. At the starting point of the cloud there appears a small blue circle. To end the cloud outline, you have to click at that circle.



Note that for best results you should click the area in a clockwise motion. You are not restricted to using a rectangle and you are not restricted to four sides at right angles.

For options in manipulating the properties, please see Polygon Tool.

After you complete the Cloud markup, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

You may also adjust the Properties of the Cloud by selecting Properties....

## Stamp Tool

The Stamps submenu allows you to apply standard stamps to the currently displayed PDF document page.

You may select the stamp type by selecting the **Stamp Tool** option from the **Comment And Markup Tools** menu or selecting the **Stamps Palette** option from the **Other Panes** menu. A selection list of available stamps organized by Palette type will be opened:



- 1. Simply click on the desired stamp type you want to use, which will set the cursor to a "stamp" cursor.
- 2. After selecting the stamp type, position the cursor at the upper left corner of the position where you want to place the stamp, and click:



3. After placing, you may click-and-drag the stamp to a better position. You may also resize the stamp by clickand-dragging any of the 4 small boxes at the corners of the stamp.

Stamps Palette opens the Stamps Palette dialog with a selection list of available stamps organized by Palette



Đ Zoom In 😑 Zoo	om Out 📄 New from	File 📄 New from Cli	pboard 💷 🛅
Standard			
APPROVED	AS IS	CONFIDENTIAL	DEPARTMENTAL
Approved	As Is	Confidential	Departmental
DRAFT	EXPERIMENTAL	EXPIRED	FINAL
Draft	Experimental	Expired	Final
FOR COMMENT	FOR PUBLIC RELEASE	NOT APPROVED	NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE
For Comment	For Public Release	Not Approved	Not For Public Release
SOLD	TOP SECRET		
Sold	Top Secret		

- 1. **Zoom In**. Enlarges the size of the thumbnail images in the Stamps area.
- 2. Zoom Out. Reduces the size of the thumbnail images in the Stamps area.
- 3. New from File.... Creates a stamp from a selected image file or PDF document page. You could also scan your signature into a file to allow you to then 'Stamp' a document with your physical signature - however - should you do this - we strongly recommend you use the Flatten Comments option to ensure your signature is not easily interfered with in the final PDF once distributed.
- 4. New from Clipboard.... Creates a stamp from an image contained in the clipboard.
- 5. Rename. Allows you to change an existing stamp's name.
- 6. **Delete**. Deletes the selected stamp from the collection.

### Pencil Tool

The Pencil Tool allows you to draw a freehand shape on the document.



After you complete the Pencil shape, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

#### Properties Toolbar for pencil Tool



- 1. Stroke Color. Changes the color of the line or arrow.
- 2. Border. Provides more border styles:



- 3. Width.
- 4. **Opacity.** Adjust the opacity.
- 5. Blend mode. Choose from various blend mode options.
- 6. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 7. Exclusive Mode. Excludes annotations that might be overlapping the target text so that the text can be selected. Please note that you will not be able to Edit comments or annotations when this option is turned on.
- 8. Properties. Opens the properties pane

You may also adjust the Properties of the Pencil shape by selecting Properties....

#### Eraser Tool

In conjunction with the Pencil tool, an **Eraser tool** has been added that permits you to erase any part of a Pencildrawn annotation.

#### Properties Toolbar for Eraser Tool

Diameter: Ø 5 pt	-	-) Keep Selected	Properties
N			

- 1. **Diameter**. Changes the diameter of the eraser tool.
- 2. Keep Selected. Keeps that selected tool active across all opened document unless otherwise specified.
- 3. **Properties**. Opens the Properties pane.

### File Attachment Tool

**File Attachment Tool** allows you to pin the attachment to any place on a page. After choosing the File Attachment Tool you should click on the page. It opens the standard **Open Files** dialog box which allows you to attach PDFs and other types of files to a PDF document.

See Attachments for more information.

### Sound Tool

The Sound Tool allows you to add a sound comment to the selected location on the PDF page.



1. To create a sound comment, select the **Sound Tool** from the **Tools** | **Comment And Markup Tools** and click to a necessary area on the page. The following dialog box will appear:

Select sound		X
🕑 🖲 💿 🖻 Browse	۹»	
	<u>0</u> K	Cancel

This will allow you to browse for a previously saved file or record a new sound file.

- 2. To listen to the sound comment, you should double click the Sound Tool icon on the PDF page.
- 3. The appearance of the Sound Tool icon may be changed with the help of the Properties Toolbar:



Here you can choose one of the three available icons and change their color.



See Comment And Markup Example for more information.

## Comment Styles Palette

Comments Styles Palette opens the palette with the list of comments' styles.



The toolbar at the top allows you to do the following things:

- 1. **Reset**. Resets the style of the selected comment to default. All custom styles except for the default ones will be removed.
- 2. Clone. Creates the style of the comment, identical to the selected one.
- 3. Rename. Allows you to rename the selected style.
- 4. **Reset**. Resets the style of the selected comment to default. All custom styles except for the default ones will be removed.
- 5. **Delete**. Deletes the selected comment style.
- 6. **Properties**. If you select the **Properties** item, the pane appears with the tabs which allow you to adjust the appearance and other properties of the selected tool.
- 7. Set Current. Sets the selected custom style to the current tool's style.

# Stamps Palette

**Stamps Palette** opens the **Stamps Palette** dialog with a selection list of available stamps organized by Palette type.

	Stamps Palette			
APPROVED AS IS CONFIDENTIAL DEPARTMENTAL   Approved As Is Confidential Departmental   DRAFT EXPERIMENTAL EXPIRED FINAL   Draft Experimental Expired Final   For COMMENT For Public Release Not Approved Not For Public Release	🕑 Zoom In 😑 Zoo	om Out 📂 New from	File 💼 New from Cli	pboard 🖭 脑
Approved As Is Confidential Departmental   DRAFT EXPERIMENTAL EXPIRED FINAL   Draft Experimental Expired Final   For Comment For Public Release Not Approved Not For Public Release	Standard			
DRAFT EXPERIMENTAL EXPIRED FINAL   Draft Experimental Expired Final   Draft Experimental Expired Final   FOR COMMENT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE NOT APPROVED NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE   For Comment For Public Release Not Approved Not For Public Release	APPROVED	AS IS	CONFIDENTIAL	DEPARTMENTAL
Draft Experimental Expired Final   FOR COMMENT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE NOT APPROVED NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE   For Comment For Public Release Not Approved Not For Public Release	Approved	As Is	Confidential	Departmental
FOR COMMENT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE NOT APPROVED NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE   For Comment For Public Release Not Approved Not For Public Release	DRAFT	EXPERIMENTAL	EXPIRED	FINAL
For Comment For Public Release Not Approved Not For Public Release	Draft	Experimental	Expired	Final
	FOR COMMENT		NOT APPROVED	
SOLD TOP SECRET	For Comment	For Public Release	Not Approved	Not For Public Release
	SOLD	TOP SECRET		
Sold Top Secret	Sold	Top Secret		

- 1. Zoom In. Enlarges the size of the thumbnail images in the Stamps area.
- 2. Zoom Out. Reduces the size of the thumbnail images in the Stamps area.
- 3. New from File.... Creates a stamp from a selected image file or PDF document page. You could also scan your signature into a file to allow you to then 'Stamp' a document with your physical signature - however - should you do this - we strongly recommend you use the Flatten Comments option to ensure your signature is not easily interfered with in the final PDF once distributed.
- 4. New from Clipboard.... Creates a stamp from an image contained in the clipboard.
- 5. Rename. Allows you to change an existing stamp's name.
- 6. Delete. Deletes the selected stamp from the collection.

# Measuring Tools

Selecting **Measuring Tools** submenu allows selection of one of three options:



See the subtopics for a description of each tool.

## Distance Tool

**Distance tool** permits measuring the distance between two points.

To measure the distance between two points, click the **Distance tool** markup button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Select the starting point and then click-and-drag the cursor to the ending point. The measurements appear in the process of dragging the cursor.



After you click the last point, drag the dimension line to figure out the leader line and then click again.

After you complete the Line, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.



If you right-click on the dimension line you open the following menu:

Open Pop-Up Note	
Hide Pop-Up Note	
Reset Pop-Up Note I	Location
🖌 Cut	Ctrl+X
🛐 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
🚰 Flatten	
S Add Reply	
Status	•
Order	÷
Flip Line	
Set Scale	•
Export Measurement	ts To CSV File
Restore Caption Plac	ement
🛒 Edit Label	
🛒 Delete Label	
Make Current P	roperties Defaul
Apply Default P	roperties
Properties	

- 1. **Open Pop-Up Note**. Opens a new or existing note for the item. Your user name and the date and time of the note are automatically entered. You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the note.
- 2. Hide Pop-Up Note. Hides the note.
- 3. **Reset Pop-Up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 4. Cuts the selected dimension line.
- 5. Copy. Copies the selected dimension line.
- 6. Paste. Pastes the copied dimension line.
- 7. **Delete**. Deletes the following dimension line and the note.
- 8. Flatten. Flattens the dimension line in case you want to make it impossible to change the note later.
- 9. Add Reply. Adds a reply area to the note.
- 10. Status. Defines the status of the dimension line.



11. Order. Allows you to set the dimension line's order.



- 12. Flip Line. Allows you to turn the dimension line around.
- 13. Set Scale. Sets the scale of a measurement.



1. Manage Measures.... Opens the Manage Presets dialog which allows you to change the measures.

.83	1/8" = 1' Description: Architectural #1 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.125 in = 1 ft
	1/4" = 1' Description: Architectural #2 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.25 in = 1 ft
	1 mm = 1 m Description: Metric #1 Format: #.## m	Scale: 1 mm = 1 m
	1 cm = 100 m	Scale: 1 cm = 100 m
	Delete Edit	▲ ▼ C <u>l</u> one

- 2. Calibrate Measurement. Sets the scale for an object measurement. See Calibrate Measurement for more information.
- 14. Export Measurements to CSV File....
- 15. Restore Caption Placement. Allows you to return caption to its former placement.
- 16. Edit Label.... Allows you to add a text label to the dimension line.
- 17. Delete Label.... Deletes a text label from the dimension line.
- 18. Make Current Properties Default. Sets the currently selected properties as a default ones for all new Distance tools of the same type.
- 19. Apply Default Properties. Allows you to change the properties of the Distance tool for the ones, saved as default.
- 20. Properties.... Opens the Properties dialog for Distance tool.

## Perimeter Tool

Perimeter tool allows you to measure a set of distances between multiple points.

To measure the distance between multiple points, click the **Perimeter tool** markup button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Select a starting point and click-and-drag the cursor to the next point. When you get there, click again to start a new segment that is automatically connected to the first. Repeat until you reach your stopping point and then double click to end the measurement.



After you complete the line, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

If you right-click on the **Dimension Polyline** you open the following menu:

Open Pop-Up Note	
Hide Pop-Up Note	
Reset Pop-Up Note Lo	cation
🍌 Cut	Ctrl+X
🔊 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
🚰 Flatten	
🥱 Add Reply	
Status	•
Order	•
Control Points	•
Set Scale	•
Export Measurements	To CSV File
📫 Edit Label	
🛒 Delete Label	
Make Current Pro	operties Defaul
Apply Default Pro	operties
Properties	

- 1. **Open Pop-Up Note**. Opens a new or existing note for the item. Your user name and the date and time of the note are automatically entered. You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the note.
- 2. Hide Pop-Up Note. Hides the note.
- 3. **Reset Pop-Up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 4. Cuts the selected dimension polyline.
- 5. Copy. Copies the selected dimension polyline.
- 6. **Paste**. Pastes the copied dimension polyline.
- 7. **Delete**. Deletes the following dimension polyline and the note.
- 8. Flatten. Flattens the dimension polyline in case you want to make it impossible to change the note later.
- 9. Add Reply. Adds a reply area to the note.
- 10. Status. Defines the status of the dimension polyline.



11. Order. Allows you to set the dimension polyline's order.



#### 12. Control Points.

- 1. Add Point. To add a new point, right click on any line segment and select the Control Points option.
- 2. **Delete Point**. To delete a point, right click on any existing point and select the Control Points option.
- 13. Set Scale. Sets the scale of a measurement.

1/8" = 1' Description: Architectural #1 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.125 in = 1 ft
1/4" = 1' Description: Architectural #2 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.25 in = 1 ft
1 mm = 1 m Description: Metric #1 Format: #.## m	Scale: 1 mm = 1 m
1 cm = 100 m Description: Metric #2 Format: #.## m	Scale: 1 cm = 100 m
0.67 in = 2 ft Description: <empty> Format: #.## ft</empty>	Scale: 0.67 in = 2 ft
Manage Measures	
A Calibrate Measurement	Ctrl+Shift+C

1. Manage Measures.... Opens the Manage Presets dialog which allows you to change the measures.

	Presets: 1/8" = 1'	Scale: 0.125 in = 1 ft
	Description: Architectural #1 Format: # ft # #/16 in	
	1/4" = 1' Description: Architectural #2 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.25 in = 1 ft
	1 mm = 1 m Description: Metric #1 Format: #.## m	Scale: 1 mm = 1 m <sup>-</sup>
	1 cm = 100 m	Scale: 1 cm = 100 m
	Delete	Clone

- 2. **Calibrate Measurement**. Sets the scale for an object measurement. See **Calibrate Measurement** for more information.
- 14. Export Measurements to CSV File....
- 15. Edit Label.... Allows you to add text label to the dimension polyline.
- 16. **Delete Label...** Deletes text label from the dimension polyline.
- 17. Make Current Properties Default. Sets the currently selected properties as a default ones for all new Distance tools of the same type.
- 18. **Apply Default Properties**. Allows you to change the properties of the **Distance tool** for the ones, saved as default.
- 19. **Properties...** Opens the Properties dialog for **Distance tool**.

### Area Tool

Area tool allows you to measure the area within the line segments that you draw.

To measure the area within the line segments that you draw, click the **Distance tool** markup button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Click a series of points around the area of interest to draw the outline. At the starting point of the line there appears a small blue circle. To end the outline, you have to click at that circle.



After you complete the line, you may add a pop-up note. See **Comment And Markup Example** for more information.

If you right-click on the dimension line you open the following menu:

Open Pop-Up Note	
Hide Pop-Up Note	
Reset Pop-Up Note Lo	cation
🍌 Cut	Ctrl+X
🔊 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
🚰 Flatten	
🥱 Add Reply	
Status	•
Order	•
Control Points	•
Set Scale	•
Export Measurements	To CSV File
📫 Edit Label	
🛒 Delete Label	
Make Current Pro	operties Defaul
Apply Default Pro	operties
Properties	

- 1. **Open Pop-Up Note**. Opens a new or existing note for the item. Your user name and the date and time of the note are automatically entered. You may now enter any text you wish in the lighter portion of the note.
- 2. Hide Pop-Up Note. Hides the note.
- 3. **Reset Pop-Up Note Location**. Selecting this allows you to position the cursor in the pop-up heading and then click-and-drag the pop-up to a more convenient location.
- 4. Cuts the selected dimension polygon.
- 5. Copy. Copies the selected dimension polygon.
- 6. **Paste**. Pastes the copied dimension polygon.
- 7. **Delete**. Deletes the following dimension polygon and the note.
- 8. Flatten. Flattens the dimension polygon in case you want to make it impossible to change the note later.
- 9. Add Reply. Adds a reply area to the note.
- 10. Status. Defines the status of the dimension polygon.



11. Order. Allows you to set the dimension polygon's order.



#### 12. Control Points.

- 1. Add Point. To add a new point, right click on any line segment and select the Control Points option.
- 2. Delete Point. To delete a point, right click on any existing point and select the Control Points option.
- 13. Set Scale. Sets the scale of a measurement.



1. Manage Measures.... Opens the Manage Presets dialog which allows you to change the measures.

	Presets:		
	1/8" = 1' Description: Architectural #1 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.125 in = 1 f	-
	1/4" = 1' Description: Architectural #2 Format: # ft # #/16 in	Scale: 0.25 in = 1 f	=
	1 mm = 1 m Description: Metric #1 Format: #.## m	Scale: 1 mm = 1 m	
	1 cm = 100 m	Scale: 1 cm = 100 m	-
	Delete Edit	▲ ✓ Clone	
		Close	122

- 2. Calibrate Measurement. Sets the scale for an object measurement. See Calibrate Measurement for more information.
- 14. Export Measurements to CSV File....
- 15. Edit Label.... Allows you to add text label to the dimension polygon.
- 16. Delete Label.... Deletes text label from the dimension polygon.
- 17. Make Current Properties Default. Sets the currently selected properties as a default ones for all new Distance tools of the same type.
- 18. **Apply Default Properties**. Allows you to change the properties of the **Distance tool** for the ones, saved as default.
- 19. Properties.... Opens the Properties dialog for Dimension Polygon Tool.

## Calibrate Measurement

**Calibrate Measurement** is used for setting a scale of an object measurement. To set the scale you must find any two points with a known distance between them and then select these points.

First you must find a known distance, once you have, you can set all future measurements based upon that one.

Go to tools-->Measuring tools-->Calibrate measurement (Ctrl+Shift+C) and choose two points with a known distance between them. In the example, I have chosen to calibrate the measurements using a doorway of three feet (3').



Holding shift while placing the calibration will keep the tool horizontal, 45 degrees or vertical.

**Note:** With snapping turned on, I have reliable consistency in placing my measurements along lines, or in this case, inside the middle of the door jam (indicated by the red triangle) see here for more details and how to use/ implement the snapping function.

When the calibration is placed, the following window will show up:

2	Calibration	?	×	2	Calibration	1 <b>?</b>	X
Å	You have measured off a	and the second	of:	Å	You have measured	off a distance inch	of: -
Please spe	cify a distance between the ou want:	se two poi	ints	Please specin units you	cify a distance betweer u want:	n these two po	ints
3 ft 0in			i	3' 0/12"			i
Name of t	he measure preset:			Name of th	ne measure preset:		
0.29 in = 3	3 ft			0.29 in = 3	1		
Short <u>d</u> esc	ription of the measure pres	et:		Short <u>d</u> escr	ription of the measure	preset:	
() Scale:	0.29 in = 3 ft	040-01020040		Scale: 0	0.29 in = 3'		
	<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> ancel		L	<u>0</u> K	Cance	1
<u>Å</u>	Calibration You have measured off a		of:				
Please <u>s</u> pe in units yo	cify a distance between the	se two poi	ints				
3'			1				
Name of t	he measure preset:						
0.29 in = 3	3'						
Short <u>d</u> esc	ription of the measure pres	et:					
① Scale:	0.29 in = 3'						
	ОК	Cancel	1				

In the highlighted feild, place the desired measurement. Notice that I have placed **3'** to indicate three feet for a scale of 0.29"=3' then press OK.

Note: The formatting you use in this field, will be the formating displayed. For exaple if I want the following format 5' 6 1/2" I would place 3' 0/12"

Note: All units available in the Editor are available to use in the calibration up to as many decimal points or fraction acuaracy spacified in the highlited field above. for example 1.000000000000 (meters).

2	Calibration	?	×	1	Calibration	?	×
Å	You have measured off		•	Å	You have measured of	ff a distance o entimeter	of:
Please <u>spe</u> in units yo	cify a distance between th ou want:	ese two point	ts	Please <u>s</u> pec in units you	ify a distance between t 1 want:	hese two poi	nts
1.000m				1 m 0.00 cr	m		i
Name of t	he measure preset:			Name of th	e measure preset:		
0.74 cm =	: 1m			0.74 cm =	1 m		
Short <u>d</u> esc	cription of the measure pre	set:	$\neg \parallel $	Short <u>d</u> escr	iption of the measure p	reset:	
() Scale:	0.74 cm = 1m			Scale: 0	.74 cm = 1 m		
	<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> ancel			<u>O</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	

Now you will be able to place all future measurements using this scale.

You can manage the format/scale later by right clicking on a measurment, set scale:



In the screenshot below, I have encased the measurement of the initial calibration. All measurements placed after calibration are blue.



Notice the difrent format in the screenshot below. The scale is the same, only the format in which it is displayed is different.



If you have any questions or concerns, please email your detailed question to support@tracker-software.com

# Link Tools

Selecting Link Tools submenu allows selection of the following option:



## Link Creation Tool

Link Tool allows you to create a link in order to jump to other locations in the same document or to websites.

To create a Link, click the **Link Tool** markup button and a small cross-hair cursor appears. Position the cursor at the upper left corner of the area you want to mark, and then left-click and drag the cursor to the lower right position.

A link can be edited at any time. You can change its position or associated link action, delete or resize the link rectangle, or change the destination of the link.

Changing the properties of an existing link affects only the currently selected link. If a link isn't selected, the properties will apply to the next link you create.

To change the properties or position of multiple link objects you should drag a rectangle to select them using the Link tool while holding the CTRL key.

To move the link rectangle, drag it. To resize the link rectangle, drag any corner point.



If you right-click on the link you open the following menu:

😽 Cut	Ctrl+X
🛐 Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste	Ctrl+V
Delete	Delete
Status	•
Order	+
Transform to Quadri	ilateral
	roperties Default
Apply Default P	roperties
Properties	

- 1. Cuts the selected link.
- 2. Copy. Copies the selected link.
- 3. Paste. Pastes the copied link.
- 4. **Delete**. Deletes the following link.
- 5. Status. Defines the status of the link.


6. Order. Allows you to set the link's order. Valid values are:

ſ	Bring To <u>F</u> ront
P	Send To <u>B</u> ack
	Bring Forward
2	Send B <u>a</u> ckward

- 7. Transform to Quadrilateral. Allows you to transform the Rectangle link tool to Quadrilateral and vice versa.
- 8. Make Current Properties Default. This allows you to set the currently selected properties as default for Link Tools of the same type.
- 9. Apply Default Properties. Applies the default properties to the selected link(s).
- 10. **Properties...** Opens the Properties pane for the **Link Tool**.

Link Properties		×
▲ General		
Read Only	False	
Locked	False	
▲ Style		
Stroke Color	* None	
Border	Solid	
Width	— 0 pt	
Highlight Mode	abe Invert	
Actions		
Mouse Up	<empty></empty>	

- 1. General. Specifies the general properties of the link.
- 2. Style. Sets the style properties of the link.
- Actions. Defines the action(s) to be performed when the link is selected. The Actions list lists the action(s) to be performed when the Bookmark is selected. At the top of the Edit Actions List dialog is an editor toolbar for the Actions list:

Z Edit Actions List			? x
<u>A</u> dd ▼ <u>E</u> dit	▲ Up	- Down	Remove
Go to a page in the docum	ent		
Page: 7 X: 22.5 pt Y: 778.9 pt Zoom: 0%			
		<u>0</u> K	Cancel

1. Add.... Adds a new Action to the list.

🛴 Run a JavaScript
Go To a Page in the Document
📙 Go To a Page in Another Document
ਗ਼ Go To a Page in Embedded Document
🥥 Open a Web Link
📑 Open a File
Execute a Command
Reset a Form
📆 Submit a Form
Play a Sound
Show/Hide a Field
📙 Read an Article

1. Run a JavaScript. Runs the previously specified JavaScript.



2. Go To a Page in the Document. Goes to the specified destination in the current document.

7 PDF-XChange Viewer v2.5x	Use Page Number:
Introduction	Page: 7 \$ of 209
Result note that from Skild 2.0.38 x of the PDF-XDrange Verser our help files are provided in PDF format only – any older Verser Help files in 12MV HIMA format are not up to date and should be deleted from your system.	X: 22.5 pt 🗘 🗍 Inher
Tracker Software Products Ltd are the authors and publishers of a number of award winning software applications and developer southis including the best willing <u>PGE-KNungs and PGE-Tools</u> products for the creation and meripulation of Asiabe compatible PDE Nas.	Y: 778.9 pt 🗘 🗋 Inher
Do tools are used by mitiss of cleants around the world to work with the new ubsplints Profibilit Desument (POT) created by Addrob ice and refused as an open indexed to provide accommon man to prover discussment down during the work area when areased on a user VPC - want if the Viewing party did not have all the forts and Images present on their own PC - could be contained within the PCP for the same common wined.	Use Zoom Level:
To accompany the standard format, Adobe created a free viewer to ensure that anybody could view distributed PDF files freely without requiring the purchase of any additional software - the viewer was made thely available.	Zoom: 0%
To create PCP files the user could purchase Adobe Acrobat from Adobe direct or as the specification of PCF format was fively available to competing unflavore authors - authorse applications from 3rd particle authors guidable and this healthy competition along with the Adobt of a devise validable values at no cost has ensured that the PCF termined has not became the preferent emptition to share	O Use Rectangle:
Scannersh between Downrement agencies, dispertenents providing and the companies large and an wait. Smorhood was huppy, Addres was the Johnforninges (and not a vantif water kandes and answers, had users and Scaptiens could have all manner of documents and information and there was a healthy bid party software community separating the market and manaring that its respensive address are containing and marketing PECF free was an address for even the manifest builds for even the manifest builds and provide manaring that its respensive address are containing and marketing PECF free was and water.	Width: 572.7 pt
part - which Addor remained at the top of the heap, providing heapworking temporate attributions for ling basines. Not them, in the more means only treasmost holding, help existent that some functionations that the addors for addors the the addors and a comparing enhance applications would be adder only if they used a product attributy "artificite" to adder this functionality by Adder - all comparing enhance applications would be adder only if they used a product attributy "artificite" control that functionality used in the top model base with the function of the adder of the adde	Use Named Destination:
To be clear - we are not taiking here about the creation of PGF-files - but the ability to see and use files already created and then to be drawed in Abibity' here PGF matter, most specifically commenting and annotation added to PGF-files by non-Adube creation tools - here could not be mad by the Face Adube Reader!	
padarity the "Quer' ING formal was not an again and it is no concern that Adate will concluse to network this has the future to regain some degree a control over whice concerned endower with the addity to derive devocered FOF concerns) and medipatiation functionally alwares in the part, the parture presens for the access of this addreted format has been the fact that any software company has been the to conside products for the parture attractions that and the control of the concerned formation of the concerned of the two to conside products for the parture without hierdiness formation formation parture and the control of the co	
And that is why it has taken us almost 4 years to create the "new FDE-XCharge Vareer to allow RDE film created by any software (not unit ours or Addate's) that adheres to the open RDE formal specification as defined by Adote - to take astartage of these extended extenses.	
Nearest - we have not subpart there, we have added only a world factors and factorization that can have table and the second field sharet agains and we well contract to do so one of the correst provides and factorizations in the model, and well and the second contract a	
Als commit to not making any functions for what processing content a charge addressing in the DSI SD copy of Vorsen not to trend at this in the DSI formula and - or notine what which build have have been excludedstuder any exclusion and provide address addresses. If the file has been readed to conform and address to the PSE spectration and cars functions supported by our viewer - it will be viewable, increasing and the conformation address to the PSE spectration and cars functions supported by our viewer - it will be viewable.	
Namy Improving and Specification damps in this support downloamment of the PFF formed is 1.8 is non-to larger combined and the balance in the Proving is non-thing with an elementary the PGE contraction. Dogamentaria the downloamment share waitury distormined and controllevel independently of Addate in for the bannel of all cours and independent sufficience downloams, making the PGE formula is how quantization from the proving strategies.	
We hope you find this viewer robust and reliable for your purposes - should you need help or support - please vait our free user support forums. We welcome you ideas and suggestions on these forums as well.	4
	Add Current View Del
52001-2011 TRACKER SOFTWARE PRODUCTS	Add callent view

3. Go To a Page in Another Document. Goes to the specified destination in another document. Choose the necessary document with the help of the **Browse** button in the **Target Document** section.

u may specif	fy a new destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' button below:	Destination Properties
		Use Page Number:
		Page: 4 \$ of 225
	Accessibility	X: 0 pt 🗘 🚺 Inherit
	Identity 78	X: 0 pt 🗘 📝 Inherit
	JevaScript 79 Snapahot Tool 81	Y: 792 pt 💠 📝 Inherit
	Forms 83 Scanner Presets 85	1. Toz pr
	Plagins 91	
	Send Mail	<ul> <li>Use Zoom Level:</li> </ul>
		Zoom: Inherit
	View	200m Innen
	Plotote View 99	
	Bookmants 99 Bookmant Edilor 101	Use Rectangle:
	Bookmark Properties & Actions 102	Width: 612 pt 🜲
	Thumbnais 105 Other Panes 107	width. Out pr
	Destinatione	Height: 792 pt 👙
	Content	
	Sgratures	Use Named Destination:
	Layers 111 Comments 111	
	Atlachmenta 112	
	Fields	
	Starge Palets	
	Properties Pater 116 Page Layout 116	
	Zoom	
	Ge Te 118 Show JavaScript Conscie 119	
	Peritale 120	
	Document 121 Header and Poote 122	
	Watemarks 125	
	Background 128 Bales Northering 130	
	Insert Pages 133	
	Insert Pages	4 11 11
	Inact Images	
	kuant Scarmad Pagea	Target Document
	Insert RTF142	anger bocament
	Extract Pages	
		File Name: \\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples
		Open In: Window set by user preference

4. Go To a Page in Embedded Document. Goes to the specified destination in embedded document.

~		
This document		
Choose external	document:	
	OK	Cancel

This documer	nt> × +	
	a new destination by selecting the 'Use Current View' b	● Use Page Number:     Page 4
Zoom Out	Res	Use Current View

5. Open a Web Link. Opens the previously specified link on the Internet.

Add A	ction: "Open a Web Link"		X
	Type the URL:		
	http://www.tracker-soft	ware.com	
		ОК	Cancel
		Ūĸ	

6. Open a File. Opens the specified file.

Current Directory:	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples_Editor\	
	\\olesya\F\$\XChange\Samples_Editor\New Doc.rtf	Browse
	Rich Text Document	
Options		
Open In:	Window set by user preference 👻	
Operation:	Open 👻	
Directory:		Browse

7. Execute a Command. Executed the specified command from the menu.

Add Action: "Execute a	Command"	×
Command Na	me:	
		· · · ·
	<u>0</u> K	Cancel

8. Reset a Form. Resets the previously entered data in a form.

Add Action: "Reset a Form"		Select <u>A</u> ll <u>D</u> eselect All Invert Selection
	<u>O</u> K	Cancel

9. Submit a Form. Sends the form data to the specified URL.

nter a URL for this link:		
Form-Field Selection		
	Â	Select <u>A</u> ll
		Deselect All
		Invert Selection
		Exclude Selected Include Empty Fields
Export Format		
Type: FDF Files (*.fdf)		

10. Play a Sound. Plays the previously specified sound file.



11. **Show/Hide a Field**. Shows or hides a field in a document. This action may be used for form fields.

Select <u>A</u> ll
Deselect All
Invert Selection

12. Read an Article. Allows you to follow an article in a PDF document.

burce	Preview Page: 1
From Already Opened Document	
Current Document (Editor Manual.pdf)	
From File	
ease choose an article title from the following list:	
	SOFTWARE PRODUCTS
	PDF-XChange Editor v3x
	User Manual
	Next Queface: Trainin Society (Section ) 146,
	P.G. Ban 79, 1922 Connetons Rank Domanons 198 100 Bende Lincola, Sanda
	The Canada (with 10 the 10 th 10 th Pari Canada (with 1 the 20 th 10 th 10 th
Document has no articles	In Exage: Unit 17 August Cane Provide Unit 10 August Cane Provide Unit 10 August Cane Provide Unit 10 August Cane Provide Respect to 10 August Cane Provide Unit 10 August
becament his to directs	No. + (19)(2) 201001 1022 Nov. (+00) 2 400 104 1027
	Fig. (New State without one
	Created Wednesday, October 09, 2013
	Copyright © 2005-2013 Tracker Software Products. All Hights Reserved.

- 2. Edit. Edits the selected Action.
- 3. Up. Moves the selected action up in the list.
- 4. Down. Moves the selected action down in the list.
- 5. **Remove...**. Deletes the selected Action.

More information can be found for each variation of the link tool here.

#### Advanced

### Bookmarks

The **Bookmarks Plugin** gives you a wide range of features to add, edit, organize and maintain bookmarks in the PDF documents.



## Bookmark Table of Contents

The **Bookmark Table of Contents** operation is used to add bookmarks to pages based on the selected table of contents (TOC) entries. Select text that represents TOC using **Select Text** tool to use this operation. If a document has a TOC in one of the following formats, you can use it to automatically create bookmarks from it and/or create links to the items of the table of contents:

1) Dot as a separator:	
Title	iv
Section One	.5
Section Two	.6

2) Space as a separator: Title iv Section One 5

Section Two 6

3) Underscore as a separator:

Title \_\_\_\_\_ivSection One \_\_\_\_5Section Two \_\_\_\_6

Separate bookmarks pointing to the corresponding page will be created for each TOC entry optionally with or without links for each of the entries.

Bookmark Table of Co	ontents	×
This operation is going to add bookmarks to pages ba entries. Optionally, this operation can add links to tab links as bookmark destinations.		
Add bookmarks to pages using table of contents		
Add links to the table of contents entries		
Use existing links as new bookmarks destinations		
Try to improve bookmarks destinations based on	text	
Remove consecutive spaces from bookmark titles		
Remove prefix numbers from bookmark titles		
Use TOC indents to create bookmark hierarchy		
Choose separator type: Include All	-	
number	rs in the PDF d	tween physical page ocument and s which can be
Change indentation	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

1. Add bookmarks to pages using table of contents. Select whether the bookmarks, generated from TOC will be added to the document bookmarks tree.

2. Add links to the table of contents entries. Select whether the links, pointing to the corresponding page will be added to the entries of the TOC.

3. Use existing links as new bookmarks destinations. Select whether the bookmarks, generated from TOC will use action lists from already existing links, used in TOC entries.

4. Try to improve bookmarks destinations based on text. Selecting this option will result in the searching of the topmost text on the entry page which is equal to the title of the TOC entry and updating coordinates of the GoTo action, so it will point to that text.

5. **Remove consecutive spaces from bookmark titles.** Select whether to shrink consecutive spaces to one space inside of the generated bookmark titles.

6. **Remove prefix numbers from bookmark titles.** Select whether to remove prefix numbers, used in the TOC entries, from the generated bookmark titles.

7. Use TOC indents to create bookmarks hierarchy. Select whether to use indents, used in the TOC entries, to create bookmark tree hierarcy. Note, that this option will not work correctly on the scanned documents.

8. Choose separator type. Choose what separator type is used in the selected text of the TOC to speed up the operation work.

9. **Page offset.** Choose a difference between physical page number in the PDF document and printed page numbers 10. **Change indentation...** Used for the restriction of the text borders. For example when you need to exclude headers or footers for the multi-page TOC.

- 1. Top Indent. Used for the restriction of the selected text in the operation work from page top.
- 2. Bottom Indent. Used for the restriction of the selected text in the operation work from page bottom.
- 3. Units. The units of measure to use for the indents. Valid values are: point, inch, centimeter, millimeter and pica.

1	Change Indentati	on 💽
Top Indent:	Bottom Indent:	<u>U</u> nits:
20 mm 🌲	0 mm 🗘	millimeter 👻
	<u></u> K	Cancel

# Generate Bookmarks From Page Text

The **Generate Bookmarks From Page Text** operation creates new bookmarks from page text based on the given matching criteria which is updated in the **Level Generation Tree (LGT)**.

The LGT levels correspond to the newly created bookmarks levels. The operation runs through text and matches its style going from root level of the LGT to its innermost child. If some of the parent levels are missing (for example previously generated bookmark by given criteria was a first level bookmark and next matched style is third level of the LGT) the <Untitled> bookmarks are generated in place of the missing parent levels.

The main dialog is non-modal and allows you to select proper text for the level generation to automatically apply its style to the newly generated level criteria.

Generating Bo	ookmarks From Page Text
Add       Low Edit       Remove         Image: Construction of the second s	Pages Range: selected 1584 of 1584 pages         ● All         ● Selected Pages         ● Current Page         ● Pages:         ③ Ignore text that contains stop words         ✓ Ignore consecutive duplicate bookmarks
Settings: <custom></custom>	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> lose

1. Level Generation Tree. Used for creating matching criteria level structure which will be used for the new bookmark generation.

- Add... Opens the Bookmark Generation Properties dialog with settings for the new matching criteria. By clicking OK in it the new level will be generated in the LGT. Also, the Bookmark Generation Properties dialog can be opened (and thus the new level can be added) by directly selecting text on the page of the currently opened document and selecting Use Selected Text Style in Bookmark Generation... option from the drop-down menu which is available even with already opened Generating Bookmarks From Page Text dialog due to its non-modality.
- 2. Edit... Opens the Bookmark Generation Properties dialog to edit the current LGT level.
- 3. Remove. Removes the current level of the LGT without it's children.
- 2. Pages Range. This selects the page(s) used in the bookmark generation.
  - 1. All pages will be used.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Only selected pages will be used.
  - 3. Current Page. Only the current page will be used.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page range may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another

by commas.

- 5. **Subset**. This works in conjunction with the other Pages Range to select groups based on order within the document. Valid values are:
  - 1. All pages. All of the specified pages will be used.
  - 2. Odd Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only odd-numbered pages will be used: 1, 3, 5, etc.
  - 3. Even Pages Only. Within the specified Pages Range only even-numbered pages will be used: 2, 4, 6, etc.

3. Ignore text that contains stop words. Checking this item will turn on the option which will ignore text used for bookmark generation when it will include one of the words used in the **Stop Words List**.

- 1. Stop Words List. Text which contains these stop words will be ignored and not used to create bookmarks.
  - 1. Add... Adds new stop word or several words to the list.
  - 2. Edit... Edit current stop word or expression.
  - 3. Remove. Remove selected stop words from the list.
- 2. Match text case. When selected, the operation looks only for the occurrences that match the uppercase and lowercase characters you enter in the stop words text box.
- 3. Match while words. Searches only for whole words, rather than matching the text as it occurs within words.
- 4. Use regular expressions. When selected, indicates that the use of certain characters in the stop words text box represent notations for patterns of text rather than the literal character. Note, that the operation uses ECMAScript for the regular expressions. For more details, see ECMAScript syntax.

4 Add	Edit 👍 Remove	
Section New		
NEW		
Match text ca	5 <b>6</b>	

4. **Ignore consecutive duplicate bookmarks.** Check this option to skip consecutive bookmarks that have the same title. Only the first bookmark will be retained.

5. Settings. Allows you to save current settings and manage presets.

# Text Matching Options

The **Text Matching Options** sub-dialog allows you to configure text matching criteria for the current level in the **Level Generation Tree (LGT).** Note, that at least one of the matching options must be selected. The matching options are: **Font Name(s)**, **Font Size**, **Text Color** and **Match Text Pattern**.

Bookmark Generation Properties
Text Matching Options
Select a combination of the following text attributes to automatically generate bookmarks document: Text Style <pre>     Font Name(s):     Add Add Custom Active Remove     ArialUnicodeMS     Font Size:     9 pt      Tolerance: 0,2 pt      Units: point     Text Color:     Get Style from Selected Text</pre>
Text Content Rules         Match Text Case:         Allow multiline bookmark titles         Match Text Pattern:         ^Part*         Match text case         Limit bookmark titles to matching pattern only

1. **Text Style.** Configure text style which will be compared to the page text style and used in the current bookmark level generation.

- 1. Font Name(s). Check this if you want to compare font names from the fonts list with page text font names.
  - 1. Add... Adds new fonts from the fonts list used in the current document.
  - 2. Add Custom... Adds custom font to the fronts list.
  - 3. Remove. Removes selected fonts from the fonts list.
- 2. Font Size. Check this if you want to match selected font size with selected tolerance to the page text font size. Note, that the lower tolerance means more precision but it's not recommended to use 0 tolerance due to floating point numbers.
- 3. Text Color. Check this if you want to match selected font color to the page text font color.

2. Text Content Rules. Other options for configuring text matching criteria.

1. Match Text Case. Configure text case matching criteria.

- 1. No Restrictions. No text case restrictions are applied when matching page text.
- 2. All Characters Are Capital. Only page text with all capital letters will be matched.
- 3. First Character Is Capital. Only page text with first capital letter will be matched.
- 4. First Character Is Digit. Only page text with first digit character will be matched.
- 2. Allow multiline bookmark titles. Check this if you want bookmarks to be generated from more then a single line of page text.
- 3. Match Text Pattern. Check this if you want to specify a text matching pattern. A regular expression is a pattern that is matched against a subject string from left to right. Most characters stand for themselves in a pattern, and match the corresponding characters in the subject. Note, that the operation uses ECMAScript for the regular expressions. For more details, see ECMAScript syntax.
- 4. Match Text Case. Check this option if you want a precise text case matching with the text pattern.
- 5. Limit bookmark titles to matching pattern only. Check this option if you want to limit bookmark titles to the text that is present in the matching pattern.

# **Resulting Appearance**

The **Resulting Appearance** dialog is used for the configuration of the newly created bookmarks style.

Z	Bookmark Generation Properties	
Categories	Resulting Appearance	
Text Matching Options         Resulting Appearance         T Title Formatting	Select visual appearance of the resulting bookmarks: 	
	<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> an

1. Text Color. Title color which will be used for the newly created bookmarks.

2. **Text Style.** Title style which will be used for the newly created bookmarks (can be normal, bold, italic or bold and italic).

3. **Zoom.** Select zoom type for the newly created bookmarks.

4. Show expanded (show all of the children). Select whether the bookmarks of the current level will be opened or closed.

# Title Formatting

The Title Formatting dialog is used for more precise formatting of the matched text when creating bookmark titles.

Ľ	Bookmark Generation Properties		
Categories	T Title Formattir	ıg	
Text Matching Options Resulting Appearance T Title Formatting	Select text properties that will be applied to the new bookman Text Case O Do Not Change UPPERCASE Iowercase		
	<ul> <li>☐ Title Case</li> <li>Advanced Formatting</li> <li>☐ Search and replace bookmarks title with text patterns</li> <li>Search pattern:</li> <li>Replace pattern:</li> <li>☐ Match text case</li> <li>☐ Insert this text before each title:</li> <li>☐ Add this text after each title:</li> <li>Leading numbers: No Change </li> <li>Maximum title length: 256 \$ (characters)</li> <li>☐ Remove duplicate spaces</li> </ul>	Use: Numbers	
<u></u>		<u>o</u> ĸ	<u>C</u> an

- 1. Text Case. Choose how to format text case for the resulting bookmark titles.
  - 1. Do Not Change. Choose this option to leave text case as it is.
  - 2. UPPERCASE. Choose this option to convert all of the text into the uppercase.
  - 3. Title Case. Choose this options to make all words to start from the uppercase letter.
  - 4. Sentence case. Choose this option to make only the first word of the title to start from the uppercase letter.
  - 5. **Iowercase.** Choose this option to convert all of the letters in the generated bookmark title into the lowercase.

2. Advanced Formatting. Allows you to search and replace some elements in the generated bookmark titles using regular expressions. Note, that the operation uses ECMAScript for the regular expressions. For more details, see ECMAScript syntax.

- 1. Search and replace bookmarks title with text patterns. Check this option to search and replace some elements inside the generated bookmark titles.
- 2. Search pattern. Enter the regular expression or text to look for in the matched text.
- 3. Replace pattern. Enter the regular expression or text to replace the found pattern with.
- 4. Match text case. Check this to match the exact text case when searching for the pattern in the matched

text.

3. Insert this text before each title. Check this option to enter prefix for the bookmark titles of this level.

4. Add this text after each title. Check this option to enter suffix for the bookmark titles of this level.

5. Leading numbers. Choose whether to add, remove leading numbers in the text or leave them unchanged. When adding numbers you can choose between Numbers, Letters or Roman Letters.

6. **Maximum title length.** If the newly generated bookmark title exceeds the entered length the number of characters will be reduced to the entered length.

7. **Remove duplicate spaces.** Select this options to remove duplicate spaces or convert other space symbols into one space in the newly created bookmark titles.

# Bookmark Every Nth Page

The **Bookmark Every Nth Page** operation creates bookmarks with links to every N-th page in the selected range of pages. The first created bookmark will link to the first page of the page range, the next one - to 1+Nth page, etc.

Bookma	roperties rk every 1    page in the selected page range
Bookmark title	e template:
Page %[Page]	[.] -
<u>All</u> <u>Selected</u> <u>Current</u> Pa	
O Pages:	i (total 253 pages)

- 1. **Bookmarking Properties**. Specifies the properties of creating bookmarks. Here you may set the pages that will be bookmarked in the selected page range. A minimum value is 1, a maximum is 10000.
  - Bookmark title template. Specifies the title of the bookmark. You may enter any valid name you like. In addition, clicking the Macros button opens a submenu of title name macros that you can use to automatically generate bookmark titles.



- Sequential number %[SeqNum] inserts sequential number of every bookmark in a selected range, starting from 1 by default. Start number can be changed by passing custom number as a macro parameter after ':', e.g. %[SeqNum:0] %[SeqNum:100] etc.
- Page number %[Page] inserts page number that bookmark is pointing to. If bookmark is not pointing to a
  page, it won't insert anything.
- Page Label **%[Label]** inserts page label of a page that bookmark is pointing to. If bookmark is not pointing to a page, it won't insert anything.
- Page First Text Line -
- 2. Pages Range. This selects the page(s) used in the bookmark creation.
  - 1. All pages will be used.
  - 2. Selected Pages. Only selected pages will be used.
  - 3. Current Page. Only the current page will be used.
  - 4. **Pages**. Individual pages are indicated by their numbers beginning with 1. Sequential page range may appear as hyphenated inclusive ranges, viz. 2-5 will select pages 2, 3, 4, and 5. Multiple page ranges may be specified, separated from one another by commas.

## Add Text to Bookmark Title

The **Add Text To Bookmark Title** operation is used to insert text before and after original bookmark titles. Insert any plain text, or use available macros to add specific "dynamic" text, such as current date and time, page that particular bookmark points to, page label, bookmark index etc.

Ac Ac	ld Text To Book	mark Title	×
Add Text			
Add Prefix to Bookmark Title:		Add Suffix to Bookr	mark Title:
%[SeqNum]	"Bookmark Title"		
Remove excessive spaces	from Bookmark Titl	le	
Select Bookmarks Source			
Use bookmarks from:			
Document	-		
Select Bookmarks Levels To Pro	ocess		
Process all bookmark leve	ls		
Select level to process:	1	\$	
Include all sub-levels			
		<u>O</u> K	Cancel

- 1. Add Text. Select prefix and suffix to add to the bookmark title.
  - 1. Add Prefix to Bookmark Title. Input prefix text that will be inserted before the original title. Enter any plain text, or click macro button at the right and select desirable macro(s) in drop-down list to insert specific information.
  - Add Suffix to Bookmark Title. Input suffix text that will be appended to the original title. Enter any plain text, or click macro button at the right and select desirable macro(s) in drop-down list to insert specific information.
  - 3. **Remove excessive spaces from original Bookmark Title.** Removes starting and ending space-symbols from original bookmark title. Also if there are more than 1 consecutive space-symbols within bookmark title, each such occurrence will be replaced to a single space.
  - 4. Macro button. To insert some specific information, such as date, time, bookmark index, page number that bookmark points to, number of bookmark etc., click macro button and use macros from a drop-down list. For instance, to insert current system time, click "Time" in drop-down menu and macro mask %[Time] will be inserted into active edit. On *OK* it will be replaced to current time and added as text to every bookmark in a range. As well, to add specific bookmark index in a bookmark tree select "Hierarchical index" macro. Mask %[HierIndex] will be inserted into active edit and on *OK* it will be replaced to particular bookmark hierarchical index, depending on bookmark position in a tree, such as "1", "1.1", "1.2", "1.2.1", "1.2.4.6" etc.

Some macros have additional parameters, that specify macro behavior or their representation and are set next to colon after the macro name (e.g. **%[SeqNum:0]**, *0* is parameter). For example, you can set time format to display only hours and minutes, avoiding seconds and so forth. You may combine as many different macros in both edits as you need. Full list of available macros and their parameters is available below in documentation.

Available macros are:

- Hierarchical index **%[HierIndex]** inserts bookmark index in bookmark tree, depending on its location in there. For instance, 1.1 and 1.2 values stand for bookmarks of the second level that are 1st and 2nd in their parent, whose parent is 1st bookmark on the first level. As well, 1.2.4 stands for bookmark number 4 of bookmark with index 1.2 and so forth.
- Level of bookmark %[Level] inserts nesting level of bookmark in a bookmark tree.
- Index in parent **%[IndexInPar]** inserts bookmark index in its parent bookmark. If the bookmark is already on the 1st level (has no evident parents), inserts bookmark's sequential number in a bookmark tree among bookmarks of the 1st level.
- Sequential number %[SeqNum] inserts sequential number of every bookmark in a selected range, starting from 1 by default. Start number can be changed by passing custom number as a macro parameter after ':', e.g. %[SeqNum:0] %[SeqNum:100] etc.
- Page number %[Page] inserts page number that bookmark is pointing to. If bookmark is not pointing to a
  page, it won't insert anything.\*
- Named Destination %[Dest] inserts named destination that bookmark is pointing to. If bookmark is not
  pointing to destination, it won't insert anything.\*
- Page Label %[Label] inserts page label of a page that bookmark is pointing to. If bookmark is not pointing to a
  page, it won't insert anything.\*
- Web Link to Open %[ÚRI] inserts a web URL if bookmark is pointing to any, otherwise it won't insert anything.
- File to Open %[File] inserts a name of file if bookmark is pointing to any, otherwise it won't insert anything.
- Document Title %[DocTitle] inserts a title of the current document.
- Number Of Pages %[PagesCount] inserts total number of pages in the current document.
- Date %[Date] inserts current system date. Date macro can be used with parameters after colon: y year, M month, d day, e.g. %[Date:yyyyMMdd]. Date format depends on what parameters you have passed and on count of these parameters. If used without parameters, date will be formatted according to system settings. Date parameters are:

y, yy - inserts two last numbers of current year, yyy, yyyy - inserts all numbers of current year. M,MM - inserts current month number, MMM - inserts shortened month name (e.g. Mar), MMMM - full month name (e.g. March)

d, dd - inserts current calendar day number, ddd - inserts shortened day name (e.g. Wed), dddd - full name of the day (e.g. Wednesday).

Also, you may use other symbols to separate one parameter from others (spaces, dashes, commas etc.). For instance, macro %[Date: MMM dd, yy] can insert Mar 31, 15. Macro %[Date: dddd, MMMM dd] - will insert Wednesday, March 31.

- Time %[Time] inserts current system time formatted according to system settings. Time format can be changed using available parameters: hh hours, mm minutes, ss seconds. Macro %[Time: hh mm ss] will insert 6 57 13, %[Time: mm] will insert only minutes.
- Environment variables %[Env:..] inserts selected environment variable value. Environment variable is passed as a parameter for %[Env:..] macro instead of "..". To insert necessary variable click Macro button - Environment variable - and select an item in displayed menu . Available variables are: ALLUSERSPROFILE, APPDATA, CommonProgramFiles, CommonProgramFiles(x86), CommonProgramW6432, COMPUTERNAME, HOMEDRIVE, HOMEPATH, LOCALAPPDATA, LOGONSERVER, OS, Path, PROCESSOR\_ARCHITECTURE, ProgramData, ProgramFiles, ProgramFiles(x86), ProgramW6432, PUBLIC, SESSIONNAME, SystemDrive, SystemRoot, TEMP, TMP, USERDOMAIN, USERDOMAIN\_ROAMINGPROFILE, USERNAME, USERPROFILE, windir.

\* if bookmark has more than one page it points to, macro will insert information about the last of them. Also, if **%[Dest]** macro is selected and the last page that bookmark points to is not set by named destination, **%[Dest]** will insert nothing.

\*\* if bookmark is pointing to more than one web link or more than one file to open, **%[URI]** and **%[File]** macros will insert the first web link and filename respectively.

Select Bookmarks Source. Adding text to bookmarks can be applied to all bookmarks, bookmarks of certain level(s), or to selected bookmarks, with (or without) sub-bookmarks, depending on what following options were selected.
 Select Bookmarks Levels To Process. Choose bookmarks levels from Bookmark Tree which should be processed when adding text to bookmark title.

- 1. Process all bookmark levels. Process all bookmarks available in a document.
- 2. Select level to process. Allows you to specify bookmarks of certain level to be processed. (e.g. only *level 3*). This option requires unselected *Process all bookmark levels* feature. If you want to process all levels from certain to deepest (e.g. levels 3, 4, 5,... to the deepest available), select **Include sub-levels** checkbox.
- 3. Include sub-levels allows you to process all bookmarks located on levels starting from specified level in Select level to process edit to the deepest. If level to process is 3, then with Include sub-levels option processing levels are 3, 4, 5, ... to the deepest available.

# Convert Named Destinations To Regular Destinations

If a bookmark points to a destination, the **Convert Named Destinations To Regular Destinations** operation converts all Go-to actions with destinations to page numbers, to which points the destination.

lect Bookmarks Source		
e bookmarks:		
All bookmarks	-	
Include all sub-bookm	iarks	
Remove converted name	ed destinations from do	cument
	ОК	Cancel

- 1. Select Bookmark Source. Defines the bookmarks which should be converted.
  - 1. Use bookmarks. Choose whether to convert all bookmarks or selected ones.
  - 2. Include all sub-bookmarks. If checked, it will convert sub-bookmarks as well.
- 2. **Remove converted named destinations from document**. Deletes all named destinations, which were converted to a bookmark's page number. Prior to deleting, this option is checking all locations, where the same named destination may be used. If that named destination is found in any other location (not converted bookmarks, links, document actions, etc.), it will not be removed from the list of all destinations.

## Build Table of Contents

The **Build Table of Contents** operation inserts table of contents (TOC) into the currently opened document. The TOC is generated from the bookmarks tree by printing bookmarks titles as text. Links with action lists from the respective bookmarks are automatically added to the TOC entries. TOC appearance can be customized by selecting different font parameters.

Z Build	Table of Contents
Title:	Page Settings
Table of Contents	Insert Table of Contents before page: 1 💠
Add Edit Edit	O Document (594 x 792 pt)
Level: Title	● Standard: A4 (595,3 x 841,9 pt) ▼ Portrait ▼
Font Name: Arial-BoldMT Font Size: 22,0 pt	◯ Custom: 595,3 pt \$ × 841,9 pt \$ point ▼
Text Color: RGB(0,0,0)	Page Margins:
Font Name: Arial-BoldMT	Left: 72 pt 💠 Top: 72 pt 💠
Font Size: 18,0 pt Text Color: ■ RGB(0,0,0)	Right: 72 pt 💠 Bottom: 72 pt 💠
	Bookmarks
	✓ Use all bookmark levels
	First bookmark level to include into TOC: 1
	Last bookmark level to include into TOC: 999 🗢
	Skip invalid bookmarks
	Remove consecutive spaces from bookmark titles
	Page Numbering
	Output page numbers as: Original Page Numbers
	Style: Chapter1
Settings: <custom></custom>	Build <u>C</u> lose

1. **Title.** Enter new title of the table of contents.

2. **Style Tree**. Specifies the styles of the hierarchical levels of the TOC entries. Note, that the Title style and the style of the first hierarchical level must be specified. The other levels which are not specified in the **Style Tree** will have the same style as the last entered level in the **Style Tree**.

- 1. Add... Adds a new TOC hierarchical level font specification.
- 2. Edit... Edit font specification of the currently selected TOC hierarchical level.
- 3. **Remove.** Removes currently selected TOC hierarchical level font specification with all of it's children. Note, that Title level and the first level could not be removed.

1	Select Font			>
Eont: Arial		Style:	<u>S</u> ize:	\$
Arial         O         Courier New         Courier New         ABXΔΕΦΓΗΙ         Symbol         Times New Roman         Times New Roman		Regular Bold Italic Bold Italic Effects	22 pt 14,0 pt 16,0 pt 18,0 pt 20,0 pt 22,0 pt	
Aa ZapfDingbats ZapfDingbats System Fonts (188) Aharoni Aharoni Maroni		Stro <u>k</u> e: Stroke <u>w</u> idth: <u>U</u> nderline:	al de la constance de la const	
		<u>0</u> K	Cancel	

- 3. Page Settings. Select parameters of the new pages which will be created with the table of contents.
  - 1. Insert Table of Contents before pages. Select where the new TOC pages will be inserted.
  - 2. Document. The newly created pages will have the same size as document first page
  - 3. Standard. Select one of the predefined page sizes and it's orientation.
  - 4. Custom. Select custom page size.
  - 5. Page Margins. Enter text margins on the newly created pages.
    - 1. Left. Enter left text margin.
    - 2. Right. Enter right text margin.
    - 3. **Top.** Enter top text margin.
    - 4. Bottom. Enter bottom text margin.
- 4. Bookmarks. Select which bookmarks to include into TOC entries creation.
  - 1. Use all bookmark levels. Generate TOC from all of the bookmarks from the Bookmark Tree.
  - 2. First bookmark level to include into TOC. Select first bookmark level from the Bookmark Tree to include into TOC entries.
  - 3. Last bookmark level to include into TOC. Select last bookmark level from the Bookmark Tree to include into TOC entries.
  - 4. Skip invalid bookmarks. Skip bookmarks which have no GoTo actions or have invalid titles.
  - 5. **Remove consecutive spaces from bookmark titles.** Remove consecutive spaces from bookmark titles when getting them from the Bookmark Tree structure.
- 5. Page Numbering. Select how to number pages of the new TOC entries.
  - 1. **Output page numbers as.** Choose how to display page numbers in the TOC entries. It could either be a GoTo action page number, or a page label (if that page has one), or a bates numbering used on that page (if that page has one).
  - 2. Style. Choose one of the given separator styles for the TOC entries.
- 6. Settings. Allows you to save current settings and manage presets.

#### Sort Bookmarks

The **Sort Bookmarks** operation is used to sort bookmarks into desired order. The operation provides two methods of sorting: alphabetical and based on the referencing page number. Bookmarks can be sorted on different levels with or without child bookmarks.

2	Sort Bookmar	ks ×
Sorting	Method	
<ul> <li>Sor</li> </ul>	t bookmarks by referencing	page number
O Soi	t bookmarks alphabetically	
Sort	all bookmarks levels	
	Select bookmarks level to	sort: 1
Sort	hild bookmarks	
📃 Igno	e text case	
	Sorting type: Ascending	-
	ОК	Cancel
	<u></u> n	Surce

- 1. Sorting Method. Specifies method of sorting
  - 1. Sort bookmarks by referencing page number. Use referencing page numbers to sort bookmarks in desired order. Note that this option uses last GoTo action from the bookmarks action list.
  - 2. Sort bookmarks alphabetically. Use bookmark titles to sort bookmarks in desired order.
- 2. Sort all bookmarks levels. Choose whether to sort all of the bookmarks from bookmarks tree.
- 3. Select bookmarks level to sort. Enter bookmark level that needs to be sorted.
- 4. Sort child bookmarks. Choose whether to sort child bookmarks starting from the selected level.
- 5. Ignore text case. Choose whether to ignore text case when sorting alphabetically.
- 6. Sorting type. Choose whether to sort by ascending or descending order based on the sorting method.

# Validate Bookmarks

The **Validate Bookmarks** operation is used for checking bookmarks titles and action lists for possible invalid parameters and errors.

Z Vali	date Bookmarks	×
Warn about empty title		
Warn about empty action li	ist or no valid children	
Warn about invalid GoTo ad	ctions	
Warn about absence of Gol	To action in the action list	
Warn about invalid GoToR	and GoToE actions	
Warn about invalid Launch	and URI actions	
Warn about other invalid ad	ctions	
Verify links to external docu	iments and files	
Rename	Remove	
▲ 1. Bookmark: "> 2"		
No GoTo action is presen	t in the action list.	
▲ 2. Bookmark: "> "		
Bookmark title is empty. Bookmark has no actions	assigned to it.	
▲ <u>1</u> 3. Bookmark: "> > "		
Bookmark title is empty. Bookmark has no actions	assigned to it.	
▲ <u>▲</u> 4. Bookmark: "> > > "		
Bookmark title is empty. Bookmark has no actions		invalid bookmark(s)
Highlight Bookmark	Validate	Close

1. Warn about empty title. Search for bookmarks which have empty title.

2. Warn about empty action list or no valid children. Search for bookmarks with empty action lists or when action lists don't have any valid children.

3. Warn about invalid GoTo actions. Search for invalid GoTo actions inside bookmarks action lists.

4. Warn about absence of GoTo actions in the action list. Search for bookmarks which do not have at least one GoTo action.

5. Warn about invalid GoToR and GoToE actions. Search for bookmarks with GoToR and GoToE actions which do not have proper file names in their data.

6. Warn about invalid Launch and URI actions. Search for bookmarks with empty URI or Launch actions.

7. Warn about other invalid actions. Search for bookmarks which have other invalid actions in their action lists.

8. Verify links to external documents and files. Verify GoToR and Launch actions file names for physical existence on hard drive.

9. Invalid Bookmarks List. Displays found invalid bookmarks based on the validation criteria. After the modification of the invalid bookmarks title and/or action list selected bookmark goes through the validation process one more time.

- 1. Rename... Change title of the selected bookmark.
- 2. Edit... Edit action list of the selected bookmark.
- 3. Remove. Remove selected bookmarks from the Bookmark Tree in the current document. Note, that

bookmark is physically deleted from the Tree, not just from the **Invalid Bookmarks List**. The invalid bookmarks can be removed with or without children. When removing the invalid bookmarks without children, their respective children are moved to the same level where their parents were.

10. Highlight Bookmark. Highlights invalid bookmark inside the current documents Bookmark Tree.

# Export Bookmarks To HTML File

The **Export Bookmarks To HTML File** operation exports the bookmarks to a file with HTML format. The hierarchy is saved.



# Export Bookmarks to Text File

The **Export Bookmarks to Text File** operation exports the bookmarks into the text file. It is possible to export all, selected bookmarks or only those which perform hyperlink actions. The output file can be saved using PDF-document filename or a file name and destination folder determined by a user.

Except for the bookmarks, the bookmark properties can also be exported.

General
Select Bookmarks to Export
<ul> <li>Export all</li> <li>Export selected bookmarks         <ul> <li>Include all sub-bookmarks</li> <li>Export bookmarks that perform hyperlink actions:</li> <li>Bookmarks with all types of hyperlink actions</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Output Parameters         Image: State of the same is a same results         File Name:         Folder: C:\Users\lesya\Documents\         Image: Overwrite existing files         Open containing folder

- 1. Select Bookmarks to Export. Specifies which bookmarks will be exported.
  - 1. **Export all**. Exports all bookmarks.
  - 2. **Export selected bookmarks**. Exports bookmarks which are selected with the mouse cursor on the Bookmarks pane.
  - 3. Include all sub-bookmarks. If checked, it will export sub-bookmarks as well.
  - 4. **Export bookmarks that perform hyperlink actions**. Exports only those bookmarks which perform hyperlink actions. The following options are given to specify this parameter:
  - Bookmarks with all types of hyperlink actions
  - Bookmarks with Go-to Page actions
  - Bookmarks with Open File actions
  - Bookmarks with Open Web Link actions
  - Bookmarks with Go-to Remote actions
  - Bookmarks with Javascript actions
- 2. Output Parameters. Specifies the parameters of the output file.
  - 1. Use PDF-document filename to save results.
  - 2. File name. Specifies the name of the output file. You may enter any valid file name you like.
  - 3. **Folder**. Selects the destination folder to receive the image files. Note that you may not simply type in the destination folder. Clicking the **Browse** button opens the **Browse for Folder**.
  - 4. Overwrite existing files. If checked, it will overwrite the existing files.
  - 5. Open containing folder. If checked, it will open the folder with result files after saving.

Categories	Bookmark Properties
General	Select Bookmark Properties to Export
ookmark Properties	✓ Export bookmark actions
	🗹 Export Page that bookmark points to
	Resolve named destinations to page numbers
	Export detailed destination description
	Export Web Links
	Export Open File actions description
	Export Remote Go-to actions description
	Export Javascript actions code
	Export bookmark text style and color properties
	Export bookmark "closed" state
	Properties delimiter: ; 👔
	Do not escape service symbols such as @ # { }\: etc. i

- Select Bookmark Properties to Export. Specifies the bookmark properties which will be exported.
   Export bookmark actions. Exports bookmark actions to the output file.
  - 1. **Export Page that bookmark points to**. Exports the specified page to which points the bookmark.
    - 1. Resolve named destinations to page numbers.
    - 2. Export detailed destination description.
    - 2. Export Web Links. Exports the web links to which point the bookmark.
    - 3. Export Open File actions description. Exports
  - 4. Export Remote Go-to actions description. Exports
  - 5. **Export Javascript actions code**. Exports the Javascript code attached to the bookmark.
  - 2. Export bookmark text style and color properties. Exports the bookmark appearance properties determined by a user.
  - 3. Export bookmark "closed" state.
  - 4. Properties delimiter.
- 2. Do not escape service symbols such as @ # { } \: etc. If checked, it will not escape the specified service symbols. This function is not recommended if the output file will be used with "Generate Bookmarks From text File" feature in future.

#### Window

**Window** activates a pull down of window options. These control how the various windows are arranged on your screen. PDF Document display control is on the View menu.

Window menu is activated when Tabbed Documents from the Edit | Preferences | General and Navigation Tabs from the View menu are unchecked.

Reset Main Panes Layout	
Reset Main Paries Layout	
Reset Document Panes Layout	
Active Document to New Horizo	ntal Tab Group
Active Document to New Vertica	l Tab Group
All Documents to One Tab Grou	р
Split	×
Remove Split	
Close All	

- 1. New Window. N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.
- 2. **Reset Main Panes Layout**. Resets the current position and size of main panes to default, removing all changes. Main panes are those which cannot be closed simultaneously with the document (e.g. Search, Properties, etc.).

PDF-XChange Editor		×
Do you want to reset		main panes to default?
	<u>Y</u> es	No

3. **Reset Document Panes Layout**. Resets the current position and size of document panes to default, removing all changes. Document panes are those which are closed simultaneously with the document (e.g. Bookmarks, Thumbnails, etc.).

PDF-XChange Editor		×
? Do you want to reset	the current layout of docu	ment panes to default?
Don't show in th	e future	
	Yes	No

4. Active Document to New Horizontal Tab Group. Places the active document to the right side of a

horizontal tab group.

- 5. Active Document to New Vertical Tab Group. Places the active document at the bottom of a vertical tab group.
- 6. All Documents to One Tab Group. Arranges all open documents to one tab group.
- 7. **Split**. Allows you to arrange the Minitab windows.
  - 1. Horizontal Split. Arranges all open Minitab windows horizontally so they fit next to each other on the desktop and do not overlap.
  - 2. Vertical Split. Arranges all open Minitab windows vertically so they fit next to each other on the desktop and do not overlap.
- 8. Remove Split. Removes the window split.
- $9. \quad \textbf{Close All}. \ \textbf{Closes all the open PDF files}.$

For more information about panes and windows, please see here.

#### Help

Help opens the Help menu.



- 1. Contents. Opens this help file.
- 2. Home Page. Takes you to the Tracker Software Products website.
- 3. Check for Updates. Will check for new updates.
- 4. Enter License Key.... Clicking this opens the Registration tab from the Preferences....
- 5. **Support Forum**. Opens a link to the Tracker Software Products, Ltd. support forums. Please note you must register (free) to login and View the Forums otherwise you will not see the full forums list of previously reported issues and answers etc or be able to post problems of your own and receive support.
- 6. **Report a Problem...** Opens a dialog to permit you to report a problem directly to **Tracker Software Products**, **Ltd.** by email:
| Report a Problem  | X  |
|---|----|
| Your message will be sent by email - you may edit before sending  | J. |
| Please select the problem and heading:  | _  |
| Problems with installation/running the program  | -  |
| Description (type a short description of the problem):  |    |
| Dear Support Team!  |    |
| I have experienced the following problem(s) with the PDF-XChange Editor:  |    |
| Attach a file (PDF document) to the message?  |    |
| ✓ Include Application Settings (recommended)  |    |
| Include your font and color info (recommended)  |    |
| Include your foil and color into (recommended)  |    |
|   |    |
| ✓ Include your Windows version info (recommended) ✓ Include list of all loaded modules (DLL's etc) used in this process (recommended) | )  |
| Next Cancel   |    |

Please ensure you include all relevant info in your message and whenever possible leave all the options above checked.

## A sample PDF file is usually an essential item in any problem report!

7. About.... Opens a dialog box that displays version and license information for the PDF-XChange Editor.



## **Toolbars Area**

The **Toolbars** area hosts all but the Navigation Bar.

1. To bring up the Toolbars menu which selects or deselects the following toolbars, go to the **Customize Toolbars...** from **View menu | Toolbars**:



- 2. **Customize Toolbars...** Modifies the Toolbars according to a user's individual requirements. There are two tabs here:
  - 1. Toolbars. Allows you to select or deselect the given toolbars and also create the new ones.

	Customize Toolbars	
Toolbars Commands		
Toolbars:		
* Main Toolbars		
Commenting		
Content Editing		
🗹 File		
Measurement		
Menu Menu		
V Properties		
🗹 Rotate View		
Standard		
✓ Zoom		
* Document Toolbars		
Document Options		
Launch Application		
🗹 Page Layout		
Vage Navigation		
Delete	New Rename	Reset
Reset <u>A</u> ll		Close

- 1. New.... Allows you to create a new toolbar.
- 2. Delete. Deletes the selected toolbar
- 3. **Rename.** Renames the selected toolbar.
- 4. Reset. Changes all current settings into default ones.
- 2. Commands. Allows you to add commands to the toolbars or menus.



- 1. New. N.B. This function was not available at the time of writing of this documentation revision.
- 2. **Properties...** Opens a Command Properties dialog.

opearance		Identification	
<u>I</u> mage:		ID: cmd.close	
<u>T</u> itle:	&Close	Adobe© <u>N</u> ame: Close	
Short Title:		Shortcut	
Toolti <u>p</u> :	Close active document.	Assigned:	
		Ctrl+W	Remove
			Clear
		Keys:	
		<press keys="" shortcut=""></press>	
		Shortcut currently used by:	
	L		

- 1. Appearance. Displays the appearance of a specific command: Image, Title, Tooltip, Status Text, and Short Title.
- 2. Identification. Displays the identification of a specific command like the ID number, Name and Name (c) Adobe.
- Shortcut. Allows you to add a new shortcut or to change the existing one. If the shortcut you want to use is already assigned for some other command, it will create a conflict.

You'll be warned about the existence of any conflicts by the message under the Keys field. Clicking the **Remove** button changes the current shortcut into the default one. Clicking the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Clear}}$  button deletes the shortcut.

# Menu Toolbar

2	PDFX	VE3mar	n* - PDF-	XChange Edito	r						
H I	File	Edit	View	Document	Comments	Form	Object	Tools	Advanced	Window	Help

See Main Menu section.

## File Toolbar



- 1. Clicking the **Open** button opens the **Open...** dialog box. Clicking the down arrow opens the **Recent Files** drop list.
- 2. Clicking the **Save** button saves the modified file, as per the **Save** menu item.
- 3. Clicking the **Print**... button (Printer icon) opens the **Print** dialog.
- 4. Clicking the From Scanner... button (Scanner icon) opens the Scan Properties dialog.
- 5. Clicking the Send by E-mail button (mail icon) opens the Send by E-mail dialog.
- 6. Clicking the Previous View or Next View button moves to the previous or next view.
- 7. Clicking the Undo, Redo buttons control the last editing changes made to the document.

# Standard Toolbar



- 1. Clicking the Hand Tool button switches to the Hand Tool.
- 2. Clicking the Snapshot Tool button switches to the Snapshot Tool.
- 3. Clicking the Select Tool button switches to the **Select Tool**.

## Rotate View Toolbar



Clicking the Rotation buttons rotates the PDF view clockwise or counterclockwise 90 degrees. You can move a toolbar to a new location in or out of the toolbar area. To move a toolbar you should grab it at the left edge and move to the necessary place. If you drag a toolbar out of the toolbar area, a floating toolbar will be created.

# Zoom Toolbar



- Clicking the Actual Size button sets the PDF page to its actual size within the view pane. This is the same as selecting 100% in the Zoom drop list. This may result in the page exceeding the limits of the viewable space; however, scroll bars are provided to enable you to scroll the PDF page as desired.
- 2. Clicking the Fit Page button fits the entire PDF page within the borders of the view pane.
- 3. Clicking the **Fit Width** button fits the PDF to the width of the view pane. Scroll bars are provided to enable you to scroll the PDF page as desired.
- 4. The **Zoom drop box** may be used to select standard zoom settings or to enter any zoom percentage you need.
- 5. Clicking the **Zoom In Tool** button increases the Zoom percentage of the selected area.
- 6. Clicking the **Zoom In** button increases the Zoom percentage.
- 7. Clicking the **Zoom Out** button decreases the Zoom percentage.

# Comment And Markup Toolbar



These tools are used to Add or Edit Comments including Text, Drawn Objects, Images, Sound etc.

See the Comment And Markup Tools menu section for more information on the Markup tools.

# Content Editing Tools Toolbar



- 1. Clicking the Edit Content Tool button allows you to move or resize the content items like images or text blocks and edit text in them.
- 2. Clicking the Add Text button allows you to add the text to a pdf document.

## Measuring Toolbar



- 1. Clicking the Distance Tool button switches to the **Distance Tool**.
- 2. Clicking the Perimeter Tool button switches to the Perimeter Tool.
- 3. Clicking the Area Tool button switches to the Area Tool.

## Navigation Bar



The Navigation Toolbar controls permit moving about in the document. The arrows move by pages.

1. **Options**. Displays the following menu:



- 1. Bookmarks. Opens a pane with the list of bookmarks.
- 2. Thumbnails. Shows the thumbnails pane which allows selecting pages and performing operations.
- 3. Destinations. Opens a pane with a list of destinations.
- 4. Content. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the content.
- 5. Articles. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the articles.
- 6. **Signatures**. Selecting this option opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the list of digital signatures added to the PDF document.
- 7. Layers. Correspond to what Adobe® calls "Optional content." Selecting this option opens a pane at the top of the PDF display area that displays the optional content layers.
- 8. Comments. Displays a list of comments, annotations and markups.
- 9. Attachments. Opens a pane within the PDF display area that displays the attached files and allows you to attach PDFs and other types of files to a PDF document.
- 10. Fields. Are found within Adobe® Acrobat® Forms. Selecting this option opens a pane at the top of the PDF display area that displays the Form fields.
- 11. **Properties Pane**. Shows or hides a pane with properties of the selected object.
- 12. Find.... Allows you to locate specific text within the currently selected PDF document.
- 13. **Document Properties...** Opens a dialog to display additional information about the PDF document. See **Document Properties**.
- 2. First Page button moves the view to the top of the first page of the document. If you are on the first page, this option is disabled.
- 3. **Previous Page** button moves the view to the top of the previous page of the document. If you are on the first page, this option is disabled.
- 4. Next Page button moves the view to the top of the next page of the document. If you are on the last page, this option is disabled.
- 5. Last Page button moves the view to the top of the last page of the document. If you are on the last page, this option is

disabled.

- 6. Back button moves to the previous view. If you are on the first view, this option is disabled. Reopens closed documents that have been viewed during the session.
- Forward button moves to the next view. If you are on the last view, this option is disabled.
   Single Page button only displays a single page at a time. It is not possible to scroll the pages to see part of one and part of another.
- 8. Continuous button may display parts of two or more pages simultaneously.
- 9. Two Pages button displays pages side by side in pairs, but only two pages may be scrolled.
- 10. Two Pages Continuous button displays pages side by side and more than two pages may be scrolled.

## Shell Extensions

The latest version of PDF-XChange Editor now includes a Windows shell extension to display thumbnails of PDF files in Windows Explorer. When using thumbnail mode view in Windows Explorer, thumbnails of the first page in a document are shown instead of standard PDF document icons when the folder is set to view medium, large, or extra-large icons.



## iFilter

Additionally, the Shell Extensions include a very powerful search tool – the PDF iFilter, designed for end users or administrators who wish to index PDF documents using Microsoft iFilter indexing.

This allows the user to easily search for text within PDF documents, including all text in content, annotations, bookmarks, document XMP information (title, author, keywords, etc.), and even files attached/embedded within a PDF.

Show only: All E-mail	Document Picture M s 🔻 🔚 Save Search 🔎	Ausic Other Search Tools 👻 🚯	Burn	Advanced S	() ()
Favorite Links	Name	Date modified	Туре	Folder	Authors
<ul> <li>Documents</li> <li>Pictures</li> <li>Music</li> <li>Recently Changed</li> <li>Searches</li> </ul>	Lishort S9-599-m2006003-eng free_offer_lite free_offer_lite softwareboxes softwarebox	12/05/2010 2:23 PM 12/05/2010 2:23 PM 11/05/2010 4:19 PM 11/05/2010 4:12 PM 11/05/2010 1:47 PM 11/05/2010 1:47 PM	PDF-XChange Viewer Document PDF-XChange Viewer Document PDF-XChange Viewer Document PDF-XChange Viewer Document Shortcut Shortcut	PDFs (C:\Users\Tr PDFs (C:\Users\Tr Documents (C:\Us Desktop (C:\Users Recent Items (C:\ Recent Items (C:\	SCSD BU Tracker
Folders	Did you find what you were Advanced Search		117		

Key Benefits:

- Integrates with existing Windows operating systems on your home computer or computers within your company.
- Provides an easy solution to search text within PDF documents located on your computer, company network, and company intranet.
- Greatly increases your ability to accurately locate many forms of information contained within a PDF document.

# Tracker Update

The **Tracker Update** helps you ensure the PDF-XChange products are up to date quickly and easily. It is installed in the process of PDF-XChange Editor installation.

The Tracker Update runs automatically, due to the schedule, or manually from the PDF-XChange Editor Help menu or from computer Start menu. After it is activated, you may find it in the System Trey. At the start the updater automatically searches for new available versions of our products and of the updater itself.

vailable Updates:	installed Products	🎭 Setti	ngs 🛛 🕜 Help
Name		Version	Installed
PDF-XChange Editor			
DF-XChange Editor		5.5.312.1	5.5.311

At the main window the available updates are displayed.

1. Installed Products. Opens the list of installed PDF-XChange products.



2. Settings. Adjusts the proxies settings for accessing the Internet, schedule check for updates and showing or hiding the incompatible updates.

Updater Settings	×
Configure Proxies to Access the Internet	
🔘 No proxy	
<ul> <li>Use system proxy settings</li> </ul>	
Manual proxy configuration:	
Proxy server:	Port: 3128
Proxy server requires a password	
Proxy user:	Password:
Schedule Check for Updates	
Enable Auto Update Schedule	Setup
At 23:06 every Wed of every week, start	ting 15/07/2015
Ask the User Before Start Update	
Show updates that are incompatible with	existing maintenance
	Save Cancel

- 1. **Configure Proxies to Access the Internet**. Determines the type of proxy for accessing the Internet. Available choices are:
  - 1. No proxy. Proxy will not be used.
  - 2. Use system proxy settings. The existing system proxy settings will be used for accessing the Internet.
  - Manual proxy configuration. This setting allows you to enter the proxy server name and the port number manually. It is also possible to set an access to proxy server using a password. To specify a password, check the Proxy server requires a password field, then enter a Proxy user name and a Password into the corresponding boxes.
- 2. Schedule Check for Updates. Sets the computer to look for available updates due to a determined schedule.
  - 1. Enable Auto Update Schedule. If checked, it will automatically search for updates at the time, determined by the schedule. To set or change the Auto Update Schedule, click the Setup... button.
  - 2. Ask the User Before Start Update. If checked, the user will be asked before starting new updates.
- 3. Show updates that are incompatible with existing maintenance. If you own a licensed program, there is a certain maintenance period when the program is updated for free. There are several new versions of the PDF-XChange Editor available within that period. After the maintenance period is finished, you should not update the Editor. Otherwise it will lose its license and start working in an Evaluation mode. Checking this flag allows you to see the hidden updates, but we recommend you to be careful using this feature.
- 3. Help. Opens the Help Manual page.
- 4. Show Hidden. Shows the hidden updates.
- 5. Hide. If there are checked updates in the list, clicking this button will hide them.
- 6. Check Again. Looks for available updates.
- 7. Download. If an update is chosen, clicking this button will download and install it to your computer.

	50%
Downloaded: 38404 KB (39325696 bytes) Total Size: 38404 KB (39325696 bytes)	Average Speed: 1757 KB/sec Time Remaining: Unknown
Connected successfully.	
Setting file: /PDFXVE5.x86.msi File /PDFXVE5.x86.msi was successfully downloaded. All Updates Downloading Finished. Components Installing Started. Component 'PDF-XChange Editor' installation started.	

8. Exit. Exits the Tracker Update.

## Command Line Arguments

### -RegServer Command

Name: -RegServer Description: Registers COM Server.

#### -UnregServer Command

Name: -UnregServer Description: Unregisters COM Server.

### -Automation Command

Name: -Automation Description: Starts up as an OLE automation server.

## -Embedding Command

Name: -Embedding Description: Starts up to edit an embedded OLE item.

## -Silent Command

Name: -Silent Description: Silent mode (actions are performed without user's confirmation).

#### -CheckUpdates Command

Name:

## -CheckUpdates

Description: Checks for new updates and launches them automatically.

## -AskBeforeUpdate Command

Name:

#### AskBeforeUpdate

Description:

Asks a user for permission to run the automatic update.

## -ShowExpiration Command

Name:

#### -ShowExpiration

Description:

Shows expiration updates, that do not fit into the maintenance period of a product.

#### -ConnectionType:DIRECT Command

Name:

#### -ConnectionType:DIRECT

Description:

Type of connection to the Internet. Available values: DIRECT, EXPLORER, PROXY.

#### -ProxyHost: "http://updateralt.test/" Command

Name: -ProxyHost:"http:" Description:

Settings for proxy server, IP or host for connection.

#### -ProxyUser:"Zeus" Command

Name:

#### -ProxyUser:"Zeus"

Description:

User's login for authorization on a proxy server.

## -ProxyPassword: "password" Command

Name: -ProxyPassword:"password" Description: A password for authorization on a proxy server.

#### -ProxyPort:8080 Command

Name: -ProxyPort:8080 Description: Port of a proxy server.

#### -CacheTimeout:300 Command

Name: -CacheTimeout:300 Description: Time in seconds of information relevance of cached files.

#### -BaseConfig:"http://updater.test/TrackerUpdater.xml" Command

Name:

#### -BaseConfig:"http://updater.test/TrackerUpdater.xml"

Description:

Base URL for reviewing updates.

## -BaseRef:"http://updateralt.test/" Command

Name:

#### -BaseRef:"http://updateralt.test/"

Description:

Base URL for reviewing updates.

### -DebugLevel:1 Command

Name:

## -DebugLevel:1

Description:

Output mode of debugging information to debug.log {0..4}. If the value is not "0", a **Detailed Log Window**... menu option is available in the system menu of the Updater.

## -Language: [uk-UA] Command

Name:

## -Language:[uk-UA]

Description:

Sets the initial interface language.

# Index

## A

Accessibility Preferences 124

## В

Basic Tools 281 Bookmark Editor 167 Bookmarks 165 Bookmarks: Actions 168 Bookmarks: Collapse 167 Bookmarks: Delete 167 Bookmarks: Ensure Visibility 167 Bookmarks: Ensure Visibility 167 Bookmarks: Expand 167 Bookmarks: Properties 168 Bookmarks: Refresh Bookmark Tree 167 Bookmarks: Zoom In 167 Bookmarks: Zoom Out 167

## С

Certificate 252 Close 65 Close All 65 Color Management Preferences 114 Comment 256 Comment & Markup Tools 290 Comments: Export 265 Comments: Flatten Comments 257 Comments: Import 264 Comments: Show List 267 Comments: Summarize 259 Copy Full File Name 84 Crop Pages 244

#### D

Delete Pages 243 Digital ID 252 Digital Signature 252 Document 21279 Document Properties 79

## Е

Edit 87 Edit Content 284 Edit Preferences 102 EXE Installer 8 Exit 86 Export 66 Export Comments 265 Export Data from Form... 273 Export to Image 66 Extract Pages 238

#### F

File 29

Find 89 Flatten Comments 257 Form 270 Forms Preferences 135 Free Version 5

#### Н

Hand Tool 281 Help 389

#### L

```
Identity Preferences 129
iFilter 407
Import Comments 264
Import Data to Form... 272
Important Notes 5
Insert Empty Pages 230
Insert Pages 228
Introduction 2
```

#### J

JavaScript Preferences 131

#### Κ

Keyboard Shortcuts 25

### L

Language Preferences 116 Loupe Tool 282

#### Μ

Main Menu 28 Measurement Preferences 126

## Ν

New 38 New Document 38 New Document From Blank Page... 39 New Document From Scanner... 55 New Document: From Image File... 48 New Document: From Text File... 42 Notice 2

## 0

Open 30 Open from URL 30 Overview 26

#### Ρ

Page Content Editing 284 Page Display 27 Pages Panel 175 Pages Thumbnails 175 Pan & Zoom Window 282 PDF - Edit pages 284 PDF Display Area 27 Performance Preferences 113 Place Signature 252 Print 71 Pro Version 5 Properties 79

#### R

Registration Preferences 121 Rotate Pages 249

#### S

Save 33 Save All 33 Save As... 33 Save Copy As... 33 Search 91 Select Tool 281 Send by Email 63 Send by Email as ZIP 63 Settings: Accessibility 124 Settings: Color Management 114 Settings: Forms 135 Settings: Identity 129 Settings: JavaScript 131 Settings: Languages 116 Settings: Measurement 126 Settings: Performance 113 Settings: Registration 121 Settings: Snapshot Tool 133 Shell Extensions 406 Show Comments List 267 Sign Document 252 Signing 252 Silent Installation 8 Snapshot Tool 281 Snapshot Tool Preferences 133 Sticky Notes Tool 301 Summarize Comments 259 System Requirements 4

## т

Toolbars Area 392 Tools 279 Tools: Basic 281 Tools: Comment & Markup 290 Tools: Hand 281 Tools: Loupe 282 Tools: Pan & Zoom 282 Tools: Select 281 Tools: Snapshot 281 Tools: Snapshot 281 Tools: Sticky Notes 301 Tools: Zoom In 282 Tools: Zoom Out 282

## U

Uninstall 18 Uninstalling the Program 18

#### ۷

Validate All Signatures 252

View 162 View: Other Panes 183 Viewer Preferences 102

### W

Window 387

#### Ζ

Zoom Tools 282